We would also like to thank the following for permission to reproduce the following photographs: Alamy pp.26 (woman/Andres Rodriguez), 37 (Dundee Photographics), 47 (Ted Horowitz), 49 (Alex Segre), 50 (sandy young), 58 (Edd Westmacott), 60 (Kablonski/R/Golden Pixels LLC), 136 (male witness in court/Irene MacDonald), 136 (radio/Gary Roebuck). 138 (woman and carer/Clarissa Leahy/Cultural); Getty Images pp.8 (PhotoAlto/Stepan Olsson/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections), 18 (man with pipe/Matthias Clamer/Riser), 18 (woman with straight hair/Peter Augustin/Stone+), 18 (woman with curly hair/Bo/Beth Thomas/Photographer’s Choice), 18 (man with hat/Margo Silver/Taxi), 19 (Echo/ Culture), 20 (David Fischer/Photodisc), 24 (Comstock Images), 25 (Thomas Northcut/Photodisc), 26 (rollercoaster/Robin Smith/Stone), 30 (Mark Lewis/The Image Bank), 35 (Richard Ross/Photodisc), 36 (Stockbyte), 38 (Zero Creatives/Cultural), 44 (PhotoAlto/Alix Minde/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections), 51 (Fuse), 56 (family meal/Gallo Images-Hayley Baxter/ Photodisc), 62 (Jami Gilli/Iconica), 67 (Jamie McDonald - The EA), 68 (Jacobs Stock Photography/Digital Vision), 74 (DreamPictures/The Image Bank), 78 (Scott Barbour), 80 (Yellow Dog Productions/The Image Bank), 82 (Richard Osbourne/Photographer’s Choice), 85 (Blend Images/ Colin Anderson), 93 (David Oliver/Taxi), 96 (Comstock Images), 109 (Hill Creek Pictures/UpperCut Images), 110 (Photodisc), 111 (couple/Digital Vision/Photodisc), 111 (man/Alexander Nicholson/Stone), 119 (Kate Powers/ Taxi), 121 (Mark Lewis/Photographer’s Choice), 134 (Image Source), 136 (Bank of England/Jeremy Walker/Stone), 149 (miners/Tyler Stableford/ Stone), 149 (climbers/Jimmy Chin/Aurora), 150 (Rachel Watson/Riser), 151 (‘For Sale’/Coconin/Photodisc), 151 (woman/David Lauren/PhotoAlto Agency RF Collections); iStockphoto.com pp.21 (Ayron/Shino-b), 21 (Carmen/moneca), 56 (chef icons/Tzu-Lan Hsieh), 65 (Lise Gagne); Photolibrary.com pp.97 (White), 99 (image100), 101 (Norbert Michalke/ imagebroker.net), 117 (Pistol Images), 140 (Corbis); Rex Features pp.39, 66 (Glyn Thomas), 79, 87, 136 (police woman); Royalty-free pp.21 (Kim/ David Buffington/Blend Images), 21 (Princess/Radious Images), 125 (David Chassey/Photodisc).

Artwork: sources by: Suzanne Williams/Picturerease.co.uk.

The authors and publishers would like to thank the teachers and students from Argentina, Brazil, Czech Republic, France, Greece, Indonesia, Italy, Norway, Serbia, and Poland who helped with the development of this book.

They would also like to thank: Rachel Godfrey, Carol Tabor, and Michael Terry for their valuable comments on early drafts of the text; and Suzanne Williams for the picture research.
# Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Introduction</th>
<th>5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviations</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 I can understand idioms</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Idiom and metaphor</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 Introduction to phrasal verbs</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 I can use phrasal nouns and adjectives</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>People</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 I can describe character</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 I can describe people's behaviour</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 I can talk about relationships</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8 I can talk about families</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 I can describe my emotions</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 I can describe physical actions</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Everyday life</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 I can talk about money</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 I can talk about wealth and poverty</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13 I can talk about health</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14 I can talk about driving and journeys</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 I can talk about eating</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16 I can talk about study</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 I can talk about work</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 I can talk about business 1</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 I can talk about business 2</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Events</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20 I can describe a family meal</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21 I can describe a music festival</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22 I can describe a date</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23 I can describe a family wedding</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24 I can talk about reunions</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25 I can describe a football match</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 I can describe a conference</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>What’s in the news?</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27 I can talk about the media</td>
<td>74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28 I can talk about crime</td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29 I can describe a demonstration</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30 I can talk about politics</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 I can talk about conflict</td>
<td>82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32 I can talk about celebrity</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33 I can describe extreme weather</td>
<td>86</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Review</strong></td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Communication
34 I can talk about communicators 92
35 I can use the language of discussion 94
36 I can talk about presentations 96
37 I can talk about meetings 98
38 I can use idioms for commenting 100
39 I can use idioms for emphasis 102

Review 104

## Human behaviour
40 I can talk about honesty 108
41 I can talk about competition 110
42 I can talk about humour 112
43 I can express criticism 114
44 I can understand and give advice 116
45 I can talk about problems 118
46 I can describe different attitudes 120
47 I can talk about decision-making 122
48 I can talk about risk-taking 124

Review 126

## Styles of language
49 I can use informal spoken idioms 130
50 I can use common spoken responses 132
51 I can understand more formal idioms 134
52 I can use idioms in a legal context 136
53 I can use more formal prepositional verbs 138
54 I can understand idioms in written English 140

Review 141

## Types of idiom
55 I can understand metaphors in phrasal verbs 144
56 I can use idiomatic noun phrases 146
57 I can use prepositional idioms 149
58 I can use similes 152
59 I can use fixed phrases with two key words 154
60 I can use sayings and proverbs 156

Review 158

Idioms – some interesting histories 162
Answer key 163
Answer key to review units 180
List of spotlight boxes 188
Word list / Index 189
Key words 202
Introduction

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Idioms and Phrasal Verbs forms part of the Oxford Word Skills vocabulary series. It is a series of two books for students to learn, practise, and revise everyday English idioms and phrasal verbs.

**Intermediate:** intermediate and upper-intermediate (CEF levels B1 and B2)

**Advanced:** advanced (CEF levels C1 and C2)

There are over 1,000 new idioms and phrasal verbs in each level, and all of the material can be used in the classroom or for self-study.

How are the books organized?

Each book contains 60 units of vocabulary presentation and practice. Units are one to three pages long, depending on the topic. New vocabulary is presented in manageable quantities for learners, with practice exercises following immediately, usually on the same page. The units are grouped together thematically in modules of four to nine units. At the end of each module there are further practice exercises in the review units, so that learners can revise and test themselves on the vocabulary learned.

At the back of each book you will find:
- an answer key for all the exercises
- an answer key for the review units
- a list of the spotlight boxes
- a list of all the idioms and phrasal verbs taught, with a unit reference to where each item appears
- a separate list of key words with unit references
- a page featuring the histories behind some of the idioms in the book (look on the website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills for more).

What are idioms and phrasal verbs? Why teach them together?

Idioms are usually defined as groups of words whose meaning is different from the individual words. So, under the weather has nothing to do with the literal meaning of ‘the weather’: it means ‘feeling ill’. If you sweep something under the carpet, you try to keep something secret; and if you put someone in the picture, you give them the information they need to understand a situation. As these examples illustrate, in some idioms the meaning can be almost impossible to guess out of context, while others are more transparent.

Phrasal verbs consist of two and occasionally three words: a base verb and at least one particle (preposition or adverb). Many phrasal verbs are idiomatic: in other words, the meaning of the verb and particle is different from the base verb on its own. For example, the meanings of give up and give in are quite different from the meaning of give. As with idioms, some phrasal verbs are more transparent than others, e.g. stand up and the most common meaning of stand are very similar in meaning, as are sit down and sit. In other words, phrasal verbs can be seen as a type of idiom, although they are often singled out for specific attention in language-teaching materials.

Putting idioms and phrasal verbs together has a linguistic rationale, but perhaps an even greater pedagogic one. A relatively short passage of text – a practical necessity in most language-teaching materials – does not normally produce nine or ten naturally occurring phrasal verbs, but it can easily yield that number if the target language includes both phrasal verbs and idioms. This makes it easier to present the target language in continuous text rather than disconnected sentences, and gives learners more opportunity to see the expressions being used naturally, and to use them themselves in a realistic way.
Which idioms and phrasal verbs are included?

When people think of idioms, they tend to think of the more imaginative and colourful examples: *kick the bucket, have a bone to pick with someone, full of beans, be barking up the wrong tree*, etc. These vivid expressions can be extremely difficult to understand, so they are often the ones that teachers are called upon to explain in the classroom. It is also undeniably true that idioms – especially the more vivid ones – hold a particular fascination for some learners. However, there are thousands of idioms, less exotic and often more transparent than the ones above, which are of a higher frequency and probably greater value to the vast majority of learners. Here are some typical examples:

*bear sth in mind, get your own way, by far, come in handy, fair enough, a happy medium, have your doubts about sth, hours on end, I thought as much, if all else fails, in all probability, last but not least, leave it at that, life’s too short, little by little, no wonder, not necessarily, odds and ends, on the surface, play a part in sth, rightly or wrongly, so what?, take it personally, that’s life, the sooner the better, to put it mildly, two years running, use your head, you’ll be lucky.*

Some of these will appear so mundane that they often pass unnoticed as idioms. In some cases the meaning may be quite easy to guess, especially in context, but the same concept may be expressed in a different way in the learner’s mother tongue, so these expressions need to be learnt, and are equally deserving of our attention.

In both books, we have concentrated on high-frequency idioms and phrasal verbs which are likely to be of greatest value to learners in everyday English. To this end, you will find some vivid and colourful examples, but the majority are closer to the list above.

One final note on selection. Dictionaries do not always agree on what constitutes an idiom: *hold the line* is listed as an idiom in one dictionary, but a collocation in another. The same is true for *under the influence, be on sb’s side, at risk from sth, come to no harm*, etc. Equally, a phrase listed as an idiom in one dictionary may have a separate headword entry in another, e.g. *lost cause, lame duck*. Our criterion for inclusion in this series is that an item has to be listed as an idiom in at least one of the following ELT dictionaries (and they are almost always in more than one):

- Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary
- Oxford Wordpower Dictionary
- Oxford Idioms Dictionary for learners of English
- Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English
- Macmillan English Dictionary for Advanced Learners
- Cambridge Advanced Learner’s Dictionary
- Collins COBUILD Advanced Learner’s English Dictionary

How can teachers use the material in the classroom?

New idioms and phrasal verbs are presented through different types of text, including dialogues, tables, and visuals. The meaning of the new vocabulary is explained in an accompanying glossary unless it is illustrated in visuals or diagrams. Important or additional information is included in the ‘spotlight’ boxes.

Here is a procedure you could follow:

- **Students study the presentation for five to ten minutes (longer if necessary).**
- **You answer any queries the students may have about the items, and provide a pronunciation model of the items for your students to repeat.**
- **Students do the first exercise, which they can check for themselves using the answer key, or you can go over the answers with the whole class.**

- **When you are satisfied, you can ask students to go on to further exercises, while you monitor them as they work individually or in pairs, and assist where necessary.**
- **When they have completed the written exercises, students can often test themselves on the new vocabulary. The material has been designed so that students can cover the new vocabulary and look at the meaning, or vice-versa. This is a simple, quick, and easy way for learners to test themselves over and over again, so there is no pressure on you to keep searching for different exercises.**
- **After a period of time has elapsed, perhaps a couple of days or a week, you can use the review exercises for further consolidation and testing.**
• You will often notice the heading ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. This indicates a personalized exercise which gives learners an opportunity to use the new vocabulary within the context of their own lives. Students can write answers to these in their notebooks, but they make ideal pair-work activities for learners to practise their spoken English while using the new vocabulary. If you use these as speaking activities, students could then write their answers (or their partner’s answers) as follow-up.

To extend page 162, which gives the histories behind a number of idioms in this book, go to the website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills to find a regular feature. You and your students should find this interesting.

How can students study alone?

• Choose the topics that interest you. You don’t need to do the units in any particular order.

• Each page will probably take you about 20–25 minutes. Firstly, spend at least ten minutes studying the presentation, which may be a text, a dialogue, a table, etc. Use the glossaries to help you understand the meaning of new items. Practise saying the idioms and phrasal verbs a few times to help you remember them.

• Keep a notebook where you can write down the new idioms and phrasal verbs with the meaning and an example sentence to help you remember them. If you are using a bilingual dictionary, you could also add a translation.

• Do the exercises in pencil: then you can rub them out, and do them again in a few days’ time. Check your answers in the answer key on pages 163–79. At the end of many units you will find a section called ABOUT YOU or ABOUT YOUR COUNTRY. This gives you an opportunity to use the vocabulary more freely to write in your notebook about yourself, your country, etc.

• You can usually test yourself on the new vocabulary. Look at the idioms and phrasal verbs in the glossaries and tables, and cover the meanings. See if you can remember the meanings. You can do this when you have finished the exercises, or several days later as a way of revising the idioms and phrasal verbs.

• You can use the further practice exercises in the review sections which follow each module. Either do them immediately after a unit, or do them a few days later as a form of revision.

• We think it is probably better for you to do one unit at a time on a regular basis, e.g. two or three times a week, rather than study irregularly but try to do a lot of units at the same time.

• If you haven’t got a good dictionary in English, we recommend The Oxford Advanced Learner’s Dictionary. You may also be interested in two specialist dictionaries: Oxford Idioms Dictionary for learners of English and Oxford Phrasal Verbs Dictionary for learners of English.

• Go to the website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills to find a regular feature on the origins of a number of idioms in the book.

Abbreviations

The following abbreviations are used:

N noun
V verb
ADJ adjective
ADV adverb
PL plural
OPP opposite
SYN synonym
INF informal
FML formal
sth something
sb somebody
etc. You use ‘etc.’ at the end of a list to show there are other things, but you aren’t going to say them all.
i.e. that is
e.g. for example
I can understand idioms

Idioms are fixed or semi-fixed phrases, and many of them are difficult to understand.

| The situation is improving, but we’re not out of the woods yet. | not out of the woods | INF not yet free from difficulties or problems. |
| I’ll probably take a back seat and let Marco do most of the work. | take a back seat | deliberately become less actively involved in sth, and stop trying to control things. |
| My heart sank when I saw the hotel room they’d given us. | my heart sank | used to tell sb that you suddenly felt sad or worried about sth. |

Idioms are particularly common in spoken English. Some are easier to understand, but you will need to learn many of them as fixed phrases.

’It’s an expensive restaurant. Having said that, the food is very good.’

’… and then the next thing I knew, the cat had jumped out of the window …’

’Pete and Sue have split up. ~ Mmm. I thought as much.’

**Glossary**

**having said that** used to say that sth is true despite what you have just said.

**the next thing I knew** used to say that sth happened very quickly and unexpectedly.

**I thought as much** used to say you are not surprised that sth is true.

The glossaries and tables in this book will also show you that some idioms have a choice of words or a particular style. (See Units 49–54 for more on style.)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Special feature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Will they lose? ~ More than likely. She can’t do the gardening. ~ I’d be more than happy to help her.</td>
<td>very likely. very happy.</td>
<td>a choice of words with different meanings: more than likely/happy/ready, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’d be hard pressed to name all the countries in Europe.</td>
<td>find it very difficult to do sth.</td>
<td>a choice of synonyms: be hard pressed/pushed/put to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I think Ann got out of bed on the wrong side this morning.</td>
<td>used to say that sb is in a bad mood.</td>
<td>the style is HUMOROUS.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Most of all, you need to be aware that idioms come in all shapes and sizes (= are of many different types), and they are not always obvious. When you read a text, look for possible idioms and check in a good dictionary to see if you are right.

I asked Sue about her essay and she just ignored me.

~ Yes, I think it’s a bit of a sore point because she got a very low mark for it.

Oh dear. I put my foot in it. then.

~ No, it serves her right. She didn’t do a stroke of work, so don’t take it personally. She’ll just have to work harder next time.

**Glossary**

**a sore point** sth that makes you upset, angry, or embarrassed when sb mentions it.

**put your foot in it** INF accidentally say sth that embarrasses, upsets, or annoys sb.

**it serves sb right (for doing sth)** not do a stroke of work

**take it/sth personally** used to say that you think sb deserves sth unpleasant that happens to them.

INF not do any work at all.

feel that a failure is your fault, or feel offended by sth/sb.
1 Which idioms are suggested by these pictures?

2 Complete the sentences with words from the box. Then underline the full idioms.

- having pushed serves stroke foot more sore thing much personally woods ✓

- There’s been a slight improvement in his health, but he’s not out of the woods yet.
- 1 Is Karen still upset about you taking her dress? ~ Yes, I’m afraid it’s a sore point.
- 2 My brother hasn’t done a stroke of work all day; he’s so lazy.
- 3 The seat collapsed under me, and the next thing I knew, I was on the floor.
- 4 You didn’t say that I was upset with her; did you? ~ Yes, I’m afraid I put my foot in it.
- 5 New York is incredibly exciting, said that, it’s very expensive these days.
- 6 I was more than happy to help, but she wanted to do it on her own.
- 7 We’ll be hard to finish this work by the end of the day.
- 8 Sam lost the race. ~ I thought as . He looked very dejected.
- 9 They made Mandy repeat the test. ~ Good. It her right for trying to cheat.
- 10 Donna wasn’t very nice to me. ~ Don’t take it . She’s just in a bad mood.

3 Look at the idioms in bold in these sentences, then use a good dictionary to find out what special features they have (choice of words, grammar, or style). Write at the end, or in your notebook.

- He landed on his feet with that job at the bank. Could also be ‘fall on your feet’.
- 1 It won’t be easy; you’ve just got to hang on there.
- 2 If my memory serves me correctly, the first moon landing was in 1969.
- 3 My sister’s just bought a new car. Basically, it’s just keeping up with the Joneses.
- 4 He’s unreliable at the best of times, but forgetting my birthday was the last straw.
- 5 You may rest assured that we will do everything we can to help.

4 Read the text then answer the questions.

On the first morning we met our instructor, Kevin, and he made it clear we were going to hit the ground running. We had to build a raft and then sail it down a river; he said it would sort out the sheep from the goats. That made me feel very uneasy, but I put a brave face on it. The next day was even worse – abseiling down a cliff – but I was determined not to throw in the towel. By the third day I was beginning to realize we were all in the same boat, and probably all feeling equally vulnerable. That made me feel much better, and by the end of the week I’d also realized that Kevin’s bark was worse than his bite. I survived.

1 The text contains six idiomatic phrases that are being used figuratively. Underline them.
2 Match the phrases with these explanations:
   a admit you’ve been defeated and stop trying.
   b distinguish the able people from the less able people.
   c he is not as aggressive as he sounds.
   d start doing something and proceed quickly and successfully.
   e be in the same difficult situation.
   f pretend you feel confident and happy when you do not.
Idiom and metaphor

Many idioms begin as phrases with a literal meaning, which then develop a figurative/metaphorical meaning. For example, somebody can be in the driving seat (of a vehicle), which means they are literally in control of the vehicle. When we use the phrase metaphorically, we mean the person is in control of a situation. Other examples are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Literal meaning</th>
<th>Metaphorical meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They’ve decided to wait for the dust to settle.</td>
<td>‘wait to be able to see more clearly.’</td>
<td>‘wait for an unsettled situation to become calm.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’m sure we’re on the right track.</td>
<td>‘on the right road, path, or track.’</td>
<td>‘acting in a way that will bring a desired result.’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Opp on the wrong track.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Metaphors from particular areas of activity can sometimes describe particular thoughts, ideas, etc. For example, boxing expressions often describe people in difficult situations:

- The minister is on the ropes now.  
  INF = having serious problems and likely to fail.
- The boss found himself in a tight corner.  
  INF = in a difficult situation. SYN in a tight spot INF.

Idioms derived from card games are sometimes connected to keeping plans and ideas hidden.

- She plays her cards close to her chest.  
  = keeps her plans or ideas secret.
- I think he’s got something up his sleeve.  
  = has a plan or idea he will keep secret until needed.

With some idioms, the literal meaning has become lost over time, and we only use the metaphorical meaning. For example, in the past a blacksmith was a person who made things out of iron. He had to strike (= hit) the iron while it was still hot in order to bend it into the shape he wanted. From this we get the idiom strike while the iron is hot = make use of an opportunity immediately because now is the best time to do it.

The idiom have a chip on your shoulder (= be sensitive about or feel offended by sth, as a result of sth that happened in your past) comes from a 19th-century American custom. If a boy wanted to fight, he would put a piece of wood on his shoulder; he fought against the first person who knocked the piece of wood off.

You can find the histories behind some of the idioms in this book on page 162 (look on the website www.oup.com/elt/wordskills for more).
1 Complete the sentences.
1 It'll take a while to finalize the plans, but I think we're on the right now.
2 Katrina hasn't told us everything. I think she's still got something up her .
3 That boy has a on his shoulder about his height. I don't know why it bothers him.
4 I think we should wait for the to settle before we decide what to do.
5 After the recent criticism, I think she's in quite a tight .
6 I don't understand why he always plays his cards so close to his .

2 Rephrase these situations using a suitable idiom.
- She's got a secret plan. *She's got something up her sleeve.*
1 She's in control of the situation.
2 I'm sure we're doing the right things.
3 Now is the time to do it; don't wait.
4 Wait until the situation is much clearer.
5 The company is doing badly and is likely to fail.
6 She's in a difficult situation right now.
7 He always seems to think the world has treated him unfairly.
8 She always keeps her ideas secret.

3 What is the common idea linking the idioms with 'head' and the common idea linking the idioms with 'heart'? And what is the meaning of the final idiom?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>have your head screwed on</th>
<th>lose your head</th>
<th>use your head</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break sb's heart</td>
<td>take sth to heart</td>
<td>not have the heart to do sth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

I let my heart rule my head. =

4 Where do you think these idioms come from? Put them in the correct column below.

- be on the same wavelength
- bite the bullet
- beat a hasty retreat
- take the wind out of sb's sails

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ships and sailing</th>
<th>Radio and telecommunications</th>
<th>Horse riding</th>
<th>Weapons and war</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Thinking about the literal meaning of the idioms in Exercise 4, can you now match the idioms with their metaphorical meanings?

- **bite the bullet**
 1 force yourself to do sth unpleasant or difficult that you have been avoiding.
 2 be in a position of control or responsibility.
 3 learn how to do a particular job.
 4 think in a similar way.
 5 go away quickly from an unpleasant place or situation.
 6 make sb less confident by saying or doing sth unexpected.
 7 control sth/sb carefully or strictly.
 8 become confused by what sb is saying because you think they are talking about sth else.
3 Introduction to phrasal verbs

A phrasal verb consists of a base verb and one or two particles (adverbs or prepositions).

MEANING

Some particles extend the meaning of the base verb:

* Eat up your supper.* ‘Up’ here adds the idea of eating all of something.

Some particles create a new meaning, but still with a connection to the base verb:

* Let’s eat in this evening.* = eat at home this evening.

Some particles change the meaning of the base verb from literal to figurative:

* These big bills are eating into my savings.* = using up my money.

GRAMMAR

Some phrasal verbs are intransitive, i.e. they don’t take an object:

* We got up early to watch the sun come up.* = rise.

Many phrasal verbs are transitive, i.e. they take an object. Transitive phrasal verbs are of two types: separable and inseparable. With separable phrasal verbs, the object can usually go before or after the particle; with inseparable phrasal verbs, the object must go after the particle. Dictionaries often show the difference like this:

**tear sth up**

Here, ‘sth’ comes between the verb and particle. This shows you that the object can go before or after ‘up’:

* Don’t tear up the letter.* / *Don’t tear the letter up.* = destroy it by tearing it to pieces.

But note that, if the object is a pronoun, it must go between the verb and particle:

* Don’t tear it up.* (NOT *Don’t tear-up it.*)

There are also a small number of phrasal verbs where the object always goes before the particle:

* I showed the students around the school.* (NOT *I showed around the students.*)

**take against sb/sth**

Here, ‘sb/sth’ comes after the verb and particle. This shows you that the object cannot go between ‘take’ and ‘against’; it must go after the particle:

* He took against Sam after that.* = started to dislike Sam. (NOT *He took Sam against.*)

DIFFERENT FORMS, DIFFERENT MEANINGS

With some phrasal verbs, a difference in grammatical structure indicates a difference in meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The plane put down in a field.</th>
<th>put down (intransitive) land.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 I’ll put your number down here. 2 The cat had to be put down.</td>
<td>put sth down 1 write sth, especially a name or number, on a piece of paper or a list. 2 (usually passive) kill an old or sick animal with a drug.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don’t put yourself down so much!</td>
<td>put yourself/stb down criticize yourself or sb else in front of other people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I put my name down for the day trip to the seaside.</td>
<td>put sb / sb’s name down for sth write sb’s name on a list so that they can take part in sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I put her anger down to stress.</td>
<td>put sth down to sth believe sth is caused by sth.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OTHER POINTS

As some of the examples on page 12 illustrate, some phrasal verbs have two particles (an adverb and a preposition), and some phrasal verbs can be used with another phrase or clause.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>put sb up to sth INF</td>
<td>She's usually very good; Danny must have put her up to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>encourage or persuade sb to do</td>
<td>sth wrong or stupid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk sb into / out of (doing) sth</td>
<td>I tried to talk her out of resigning, but she went ahead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>persuade sb to do / not to do sth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>count on sb to do sth</td>
<td>I'm counting on you to help us.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trust sb to do sth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>work out + wh clause</td>
<td>I can't work out what this means.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>find the answer to sth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the correct word.

1. If you’ve got time, I could show you in | around the old part of the city.
2. The service was slow and the bill was incorrect. I put it down for | to poor management.
3. You’d better tear that cheque up | out into small pieces so that no one can cash it.
4. Do you fancy going to the pizza place, or shall we just eat into | in as usual?
5. I don’t feel I can really count on | in Alec to do the work in the way we agreed.
6. We were planning a big barbecue and Aiden put me down for | on making the salads.
7. I haven’t got much work, so payments on the house are eating in | into my savings.
8. You’ll never succeed in business if you keep putting yourself down | up all the time.

2 Complete the definitions.

1. She took against me means ‘she began to me for no particular reason’.
2. He put me up to it means ‘he encouraged me to do something’.
3. The helicopter put down near the river means ‘the helicopter near the river’.
4. She talked me out of leaving means ‘she me not to leave’.
5. The dog was put down means ‘the dog was by an injection’.
6. She put my address down means ‘she down my address’.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct particle.

1. I worked what he meant. 5. Put his name on the list.
2. The sun came at 5.00. 6. I tore the note deliberately.
3. Show us the exhibition. 7. What do you put it to?
4. Don’t count him for help. 8. He talked me buying the car.

4 Here are some phrasal verbs which do not appear on page 12. Underline the phrasal verb and its object. Check your answers on page 164 before you do Exercise 5.

- The man in the bureau de change did me out of about €10.
- In the mountains you have to watch out for snakes.
- It’s crucial to stand out against discrimination, especially in the workplace.
- They weren’t supposed to be there, but the police let both of them off.
- We were having a meeting when the cleaner burst in on us.
- He married the girl I was in love with; I try very hard not to hold it against him.

5 Using the context to guess the meanings, write the verbs in Exercise 4 next to the definitions.

- stop sb from having sth that they should have, especially in a dishonest way. do sb out of sth.
- be careful of sth or sb.
- suddenly enter a room and interrupt something that is happening.
- say or show publicly that you oppose sth.
- feel angry with sb for sth that they have done in the past.
- give sb little or no punishment for sth they did wrong.
4 I can use phrasal nouns and adjectives

A Phrasal nouns

Phrasal nouns are sometimes formed from phrasal verbs, e.g. take off (of a plane) and the related noun take-off, look on and onlooker. Nouns formed from phrasal verbs may be hyphenated, e.g. passer-by, or may be written as one word, e.g. breakout.

Police are interviewing passers-by who witnessed the breakout at Hyde Prison last night.

Onlookers watched in shock as the thief stole a police car and made a quick getaway from the scene of the crime …

The government has been forced into a climbdown after the revelations of a cover-up …

There was a sharp intake of breath from the public gallery during the judge’s summing-up …

Following the outbreak of violence, the police have requested backup from the army.

Glossary

breakout [briːk aut] an escape from prison by a group. break out (of sth) v.
getaway [ˈɡet ɔː] 1 an escape or quick departure, especially from the scene of a crime. 2 a short holiday. get away v.
climbdown [ˈklɪm bardɔːn] an act of admitting that you were wrong. climb down v.
cover-up [ˈkʌvər up] a course of action taken to hide a mistake or illegal activity from the public. cover sth up v.
intake [ˈɪnteɪk] an act of taking sth in, especially breath, food, etc. take sth in v.
summing-up [ˈsʌmɪŋ ʌp] a legal statement made by a judge, magistrate, or lawyer which gives a summary of the evidence in a court. sum up v.
outbreak [ˈaʊtbrɛk] a sudden start of violence, war, disease, etc. break out v.
backup [ˈbæk ʌp] extra help or support you can get if necessary. back sb/sth up v.

spotlight passer-by, bystander, onlooker

A passer-by (pl. passers-by) is someone who is walking past something by chance, especially when something unexpected happens. pass by sb/sth v. A bystander is someone who watches what is happening, e.g. an accident, without taking part. stand by v. syms onlooker, look on v.

1 Rewrite the sentences, forming phrasal nouns from the phrasal verbs.

1 Will the union climb down? Will there

2 Did the police cover up the facts? Was

3 We asked someone who was passing by. We

4 Someone broke out of prison last night. There

5 The judge summed up briefly. The

6 Will the team back us up? Will

2 Complete the sentences with a suitable phrasal noun.

1 When the men had been fighting for a few minutes, we realized there were about a dozen watching them.

2 Most people would benefit from a reduction in the of salt in their diet.

3 This move represents a over plans to change the school meals policy.

4 Security cameras showed that during the prison, the guards did nothing.

5 The party was really boring; we made a quick and went to a club instead.

6 If Marianne can't look after the dog this weekend, I've got my uncle as

7 The authorities are extremely worried about the threatened of flu this winter.

8 I stopped a and asked him to call the police.
B Adjectives formed from phrasal verbs

**Throwaway** society contributes to global warming

**Breakaway** republic holds first elections

**French Team WINS Knockout Competition**

**Doctor's Manner Described as 'Off-putting'**

**Months Later, Flood Recovery Still Ongoing**

**Outspoken** critic of government loses job

**Watered-down** plans for broadband speeds

**Supervisors Decide on Fate of Leftover Library Funds**

**Worn-out** mums dream of more support from dads

---

**Glossary**

**Throwaway** (of goods) produced cheaply and intended to be thrown away after use (also **throwaway society**). *throw sth away* v.

**Breakaway** (of a group, organization, or part of a country) having separated from a larger group or part. *break away from sb/sth* v.

**Knockout** A **knockout** competition is one in which players or teams continue competing until there is only one winner left. *knock sb out (of sth)* v.

**Off-putting** **INF** If sb or sth is **off-putting**, they are strange or unpleasant, in a way that prevents you from liking them. *put sb off* v.

**Ongoing** continuing to exist or develop. *go on* v.

**Outspoken** saying what you think, even when it upsets people. *speak out (against sth)* v.

**Watered-down** A **watered-down** plan, statement, etc. is weaker and less powerful than it was originally. *water sth down* v.

**Worn out** 1 (of a person) very tired because they have been working hard. 2 (of a thing) too old or damaged to be used. *wear sb/sth out* v.

**Leftover** remaining after you have finished or used what you want or need, e.g. **leftover food**. *leftovers* PL N. *be left over (from sth)*. v

---

3 True or false? Write T or F.

1. **Ongoing** talks are finished. 
2. An **outspoken** critic says very little. 
3. Worn-out shoes are useless. 
4. **Leftover** food can be eaten later.
5. An **off-putting** manner is a good thing.
6. If you lose a **knockout** round, you're out.
7. A **watered-down** comment is less powerful.
8. A **throwaway** product is valuable.

4 Complete the dialogues using a phrasal verb, noun, or adjective.

1. Did your team get through the first stage? ~ No, they ____________
2. Is Bess having a rest? ~ Yeah, that was a long walk. She's completely ____________
3. The article isn't as strongly worded as it was. ~ No, it's been ____________
4. What's for dinner? ~ I think there are some ____________ from lunchtime.
5. She coughed throughout your performance. ~ I know, I found it really ____________
6. Why did they form a ____________? ~ They were unhappy with the way things were.
7. He's strongly against fox-hunting. ~ That's right; he has often ____________
8. Have the discussions come to an end yet? ~ No, they're still

---

Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs 15
Unit 1

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out an expression. What is it?

1 If you put your ______ in it, you say something embarrassing by accident.
2 If you say, ‘it serves you ______’, you mean that the person deserves the unpleasant thing that has happened to them.
3 If you say, ‘the ______ thing I knew’, you’re going to describe something very surprising that happened after that moment.
4 If something is a ______ point for you, it makes you feel upset, annoyed, or embarrassed if someone mentions it.
5 If you got out of bed on the wrong ______ today, you’re in a bad mood.
6 If you’re trying to ______ up with the Joneses, you’re trying to have all the possessions and achievements that your friends or neighbours have.
7 If you ______ the ground running, you start doing something and proceed quickly and successfully.
8 If you haven’t done a ______ of work, you’ve done no work at all.
9 If your ______ is worse than your bite, you aren’t really as unkind or angry as you seem.
10 If your heart ______, you suddenly feel sad or worried about something.
11 If you throw in the ______, you give up on a problem and admit you are defeated by it.
12 If you take a back ______, you become less active and stop trying to control things.

The expression in the grey squares is ______.

Unit 2

1 Match 1–10 with a–j.

1 That man’s got a real chip on his ______
2 I can’t understand him; we aren’t on the same ______
3 I had to beat a hasty ______
4 The announcement took the wind out of my ______
5 It’s nothing personal: you really mustn’t take it to ______
6 I think he must have some trick up his ______
7 This idea isn’t working. I think we’re on the wrong ______
8 She’s the boss and she likes to be in the driving ______
9 a seat.
10 b heart.
11 c sleeve.
12 d retreat.
13 e shoulder.
14 f track.
15 g sails.
16 h wavelength.

2 Complete the idioms.

1 I tend to play my ______ close to my ______.
2 I like to ______ while the iron’s hot.
3 If I’m in a tight ______, I generally ask for help rather than trying to deal with things on my own.
4 I’ve got my head ______ on when it comes to finance.
5 I occasionally let my ______ rule my ______.
6 If someone criticizes me, I tend to take it to ______.

3 Are the sentences in the questionnaire in Exercise 2 true about you, sometimes true, or not true? Write your answers, or talk to another student.
Unit 3

1 Complete the sentences in a logical way.
   ▶ The school organized the visit, and I put my name down for it.
   1 That was a stupid thing to do. Who put you up?
   2 If you go to the market, watch out.
   3 I’m very willing to give you a hand; you know you can count on me.
   4 It wasn’t her fault but she still took it.
   5 The boys were just being stupid, so the policeman let them off with a warning.
   6 This is a very complicated sentence. I can’t work it out what to do.

2 Rewrite the part of the sentence in italics, using a phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning. Make any other additions that are necessary.
   ▶ They are trusting us to help them. counting on
   1 The helicopter had to land in a field.
   2 The sun rose just after six o’clock.
   3 The children finished their dinner.
   4 He criticizes himself a lot.
   5 We had to have our dog killed.
   6 She just started to dislike me; I don’t know why.
   7 We decided to have dinner at home last night.
   8 He persuaded me to go.

Unit 4

1 What related phrasal nouns and adjectives are formed from these phrasal verbs? Write them in the correct column below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pass by</th>
<th>Speak out</th>
<th>Look on</th>
<th>Water sth down</th>
<th>Break out (of war)</th>
<th>Wear sth out</th>
<th>Sum up</th>
<th>Go on (= continue)</th>
<th>Stand by (of a person)</th>
<th>Put sb off (= distract)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pass by</td>
<td>Passer by</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Agree with the first speaker in each dialogue, using a suitable phrasal verb, noun, or adjective.
   ▶ The government tried to hide their mistakes, didn’t they? ~ Yes, there was a cover-up.
   1 Weren’t your team eliminated? ~ Yes, I’m afraid they were knocked out.
   2 We didn’t eat everything, did we? ~ No, we’ve still got some leftovers.
   3 The minister was lying, wasn’t he? ~ Yes, it was obviously a case of spin.
   4 The police will be there to support you. ~ Yes, they’ll provide plenty of backup.
   5 You always have a holiday, don’t you? ~ Yes, I like to sunbathe every year.
   6 You must’ve been exhausted after that work. ~ Yes, I was worn out.
A What are they like?

For the Love of Alice – Cast List

Gideon Beck: Ex-army major. loves the sound of his own voice; doesn't suffer fools gladly. Thought to be tough as old boots. Very protective of daughter, Alice.

Alice Beck: Attractive and charming on the surface. Alice likes to play it cool with men, but deep down, she’s quite shy. Loves her father, but very much under his thumb.

Jocelyn Beck: Gideon’s wife. Has a quick temper; friends think she’s mad as a hatter.

Andrew Elder: Neighbour, in love with Alice. Sadly. thick as two short planks.

Glossary

like/the sound of your own voice
not suffer fools gladly
(as) tough as old boots
on the surface
play it cool
under sb’s thumb
have a quick temper
(as) thick as two short planks

like/the sound of your own voice
not suffer fools gladly
(as) tough as old boots
on the surface
play it cool
under sb’s thumb
have a quick temper
(as) thick as two short planks

like/the sound of your own voice
not suffer fools gladly
(as) tough as old boots
on the surface
play it cool
under sb’s thumb
have a quick temper
(as) thick as two short planks

like/the sound of your own voice
not suffer fools gladly
(as) tough as old boots
on the surface
play it cool
under sb’s thumb
have a quick temper
(as) thick as two short planks

disapproving talk too much, usually without listening to other people.

not be polite or patient with people you think are less intelligent than you.

INF very strong and able to bear pain, criticism, etc. without complaining.

when you consider obvious things. OPP deep down.

INF hide your feelings so that you appear calm and controlled.

controlled or influenced by sb.

become angry easily and often.

INF (of a person) very stupid.

She’s (as) mad as a hatter. INF = strange or crazy. SYN barking (mad) INF.

He’s mad keen on Alice. INF = likes her very much.

I was hopping mad. INF = very angry.

1 Circle the correct word.

1 Keep out of the new boss’s way; apparently he’s got a very quick | fast temper.
2 Low | Deep down, Joe’s a true romantic. It just doesn’t look that way on the surface | top.
3 That was a really crazy thing to do. ~ Yeah, I thought she was barking | hopping mad.
4 You’ll find that Mr Waters doesn’t suffer fools gladly | happily, so watch what you say.
5 She’s a very dominant woman; she certainly has her husband under her finger | thumb.
6 My aunt’s rough | tough as old boots, so I’m sure she’ll get through the operation.

2 Complete the second sentence so that it paraphrases the first.

1 My brother’s furious about the money. In other words, he’s mad.
2 John’s really stupid. In other words, he’s thick as
3 Ella didn’t show Luis her true feelings. In other words, she played
4 Ana adores horse-riding. In other words, she’s it.
5 Don just talks and never listens. In other words, he loves the sound of his
6 I love Caz, but she’s crazy. In other words, she’s mad
7 Mona does everything Pete tells her to. In other words, she’s under
8 Grandad can put up with anything. In other words, he’s tough
B  Noun phrases describing character

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>My sister goes to bed at exactly 10.30 every night; she’s a creature of habit.</td>
<td>a creature of habit a person who likes to do the same thing at the same time on a regular basis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Most of the group are very quiet – we need a live wire like Jez to get us talking.</td>
<td>a live wire a person who is lively and full of energy and enthusiasm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We could do with a bright spark here to bring in new ideas. Some bright spark left the door unlocked! How stupid.</td>
<td>a bright spark INF 1 a lively and intelligent person. 2 IRONIC = a person who has done sth stupid.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She always asks Dad for help with cash because she knows he’s a soft touch.</td>
<td>a soft touch INF a person from whom you can easily get money because they are kind or easy to deceive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t know if Ash would be right for the job; he’s a bit of an unknown quantity.</td>
<td>an unknown quantity a person or thing whose qualities are abilities are not yet known.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs Andrews runs the business and people think she’s the salt of the earth. Drug dealers are the scum of the earth.</td>
<td>the salt of the earth a good, reliable, honest person. OPP the scum of the earth INF INSULTING a person or group considered to be extremely unpleasant or evil.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s tough, ambitious, and he’s nobody’s fool – he’s our best hope as a manager.</td>
<td>nobody’s fool a person who is too clever to be tricked by other people. SYN no fool.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I hate dealing with Rupert; he’s a nasty piece of work.</td>
<td>a nasty piece of work a person who is unpleasant, unkind, or dishonest.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>He’s a bit of a cold fish. He hardly every speaks to us or even smiles.</td>
<td>a cold fish DISAPPROVING a person who shows little emotion or seems unfriendly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If he said he would help you, I’m sure he will; he’s a man of his word.</td>
<td>a man/woman of his/her word a person who always does what he/she has promised to do.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3  Are these descriptions positive or negative? Write P or N.

1. He’s a live wire.  P
2. She’s a nasty piece of work.  N
3. He’s the salt of the earth.  P
4. She’s a woman of her word.  P
5. She’s nobody’s fool.  N
6. Which bright spark left the light on?  P
7. She’s a cold fish.  N
8. He’s the scum of the earth.  N

4  Complete the descriptions of Angela’s colleagues. Then circle the full idioms.

Andy Crocker is a great boss: hardworking, honest, and a man of his (1) . He’s a real family man too and he adores his kids. They only have to ask for something and they get it; he’s a (2) touch.

Mrs Bolton’s been here for years and she’s now approaching retirement. She’s the salt of the (3) . and will do anything for Andy. But things have to be done in a particular way – ‘Mrs Bolton’s Way’; she’s a (4) of habit.

Mandy O’Neill is new in this department, so at the moment she’s a bit of an (5) quantity. She used to be in sales, and my friend Sally says she’s a bright (6) and (7) fool. I’ll reserve judgement on her till I get to know her better.

Tim Richards – What can I say? I just can’t stand him. I don’t trust him at all; I think he’s a nasty (8) , actually.

5  ABOUT YOU  Can you think of five people that you know who could be described by any of the idioms in the table? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.
6 I can describe people’s behaviour

A Selfless behaviour

Best mum competition

[Please write your application in not more than 120 words.]

All mums have the family’s best interests at heart, and will go out of their way to help their kids, but what makes a great mum? Well, ours has all the qualities. When things went wrong and Dad left us, Mum went to great lengths to hold the family together. She was always there for us, but trusted us to make our own decisions. When we needed a shoulder to cry on, it was Mum we turned to, not our friends. But what sets her apart from the other mums is her concern for others. She’s always giving someone or other a helping hand. We thank our lucky stars that she’s our mum! (Patti, 16)

Glossary

have sb’s (best) interests at heart care about sb and want to improve their situation.
go out of your way (to do sth) do sth that you do not have to do and that involves making a special effort to help or please sb.
go to great lengths to do sth try in a determined way to achieve sth.
hold sth together keep a group of people, a marriage, etc. united in difficult circumstances.
be there for sb be available and supportive if sb wants to talk to you or needs your help.
a shoulder to cry on a person who gives you sympathy.
turn to sb/sth go to sb/sth for help or advice.
set sb apart (from sb) make sb different from or better than others.
give/lend (sb) a helping hand help sb.
thank your lucky stars feel very grateful and lucky about sth.

1 Put the words in order and add one more word.

them | way | out | help | she | went | of | to She went out of her way to help them.
1 help | lengths | dad | to | them | went | to
2 writing | our | given | helping | we | were | a | with
3 hold | managed | their | they | to | marriage
4 best | have | heart | she | doesn’t | your | at
5 healthy | I’m | stars | I | thank | my | that
6 on | a | she | to | needs | shoulder

2 Write a phrase with the same meaning as the words in italics.

They helped me with the housework. gave me a helping hand
1 Who would you seek advice from if you had a problem?
2 Her positive attitude makes her different from her colleagues.
3 She needs a sympathetic person to talk to about her problems.
4 She is always available to talk to if I need help.
5 Dad always makes a special effort to keep them amused.
6 My sister tried very hard to get the medicine I needed.
7 I am so grateful that I have such a great family.
8 Somehow Mum managed to keep the family united.

3 ABOUT YOU What would you write in a best mum, best dad, best sister, or best brother competition? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B  Selfish behaviour

Do you suffer from selfish or bossy siblings?

KIM  ▶  Yeah, my sister always wants to have things her own way, so I have to put my foot down with her. She thinks she can twist me round her little finger, but she can't!

AYRON  ▶  My brother’s very sure of himself and he’ll stop at nothing to get what he wants. He’d walk all over my parents if he had the chance.

CARMEN  ▶  When we were kids, my older sisters used to push me around and pick on me because I was small. It took me years to learn to stick up for myself.

PRINCESS  ▶  My sister never lifts a finger to help around the house; she just takes it for granted that we’ll clear up after her. If it weren’t for me, her room would be disgusting!

Glossary

| have things/it (all) your own way | get or do what you want, even when other people want sth different (also have/get your own way). |
| put your foot down | INF use your authority to stop sb doing sth. |
| sure of yourself | OFTEN DISAPPROVING very confident. |
| stop at nothing | do anything to get what you want, without caring about its effect on others. |
| walk all over sb | INF treat sb badly by always doing what you want to do. |
| push sb around | give sb orders in a rude or unpleasant way. |
| pick on sb | treat sb unfairly by blaming or criticizing them. |
| stick up for sb/yourself | support or defend sb/yourself. |
| not lift a finger (to do sth) | INF do nothing to help sb. |
| take it for granted (that …) | expect sth to happen because it usually does. (Also take sb for granted be so accustomed to sb that you don't appreciate them.) |

spotlight  Persuading people

If you can twist sb round your little finger INF, you can persuade them to do anything you want. If you get round sb, you persuade them to do what you want, often by being nice to them. If you win sb over, you get their support by persuading them you are right.

4  True or false? Write T or F.

1  If someone can stick up for themselves, they can defend themselves.  T
2  If someone won’t lift a finger, they probably have an injury.  T
3  If someone takes you for granted, they can persuade you to do anything they want.  T
4  If someone wins you over, they have persuaded you that they are right.  T
5  If you have things all your own way, you do what everyone else wants.  F
6  If you will stop at nothing, you won’t do anything to help.  F

5  Complete the dialogues.

1  Jun has no self doubts and is very confident. ~ Yes, she is very  confident.
2  Dad refused very firmly to let us stay out late. ~ Yes, he put  you around.
3  She criticizes me, but not the others. It’s not fair! ~ Yes, I think she’s  you. around.
4  He tells me what to do and he’s horrible about it. ~ Yes, he  you. around.
5  Li’s only nice to me because she wants my help. ~ She’s just trying to  you. around.
6  I can make her do anything. ~ Yes, you can twist  you! around.
7  She’s really bossy and I hate it. ~ Well, don’t let her  way.
8  Ed only wants to do what he wants. ~ Yes, he just wants to  way.
How to make your marriage work

You think you’re made for each other, you tie the knot, then the hard work begins!

- You have to meet your partner halfway – compromise is everything. Don’t let things like finance or household chores drive a wedge between you.
- If you’re upset with each other, should you try to clear the air or walk away? Remember that things said in the heat of the moment can be hard to forgive later. On the other hand, if you walk away, you may be storing up problems for the future. My advice is: go for a short walk to calm down, then you can discuss the matter sensibly.
- Don’t live in each other’s pockets. You’ll need to give each other space in the marriage.
- All marriages go through a bad/sticky patch; use laughter to keep things in perspective.

Glossary

be made for each other
-INF be perfect partners.
tie the knot
-INF get married. SYN get hitched-INF.
meet sb halfway
-reach agreement with sb by giving them part of what they want.
drive a wedge between people
-make the relationship between two people or groups suffer.

clear the air
-improve a difficult or tense situation by talking about it.
wake away
-leave a bad situation.
in the heat of the moment
-at a time when you are too angry or excited to think carefully.
store sth up
-do sth that will make a problem worse in the future.
live in each other’s pockets
-be too emotionally close or spend too much time together.
go through a bad/sticky patch
-INF experience a difficult period in your life.

1 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.
1 Talking cleared the air between us. 5 They tied the knot last Saturday.
2 I said it in the heat of the moment. 6 We agreed to meet each other halfway.
3 We’re going through a sticky patch. 7 It drove a wedge between us.
4 They’re made for each other. 8 They’re living in each other’s pockets.

2 Put the words in order and add one word.
- of | it | I | the | moment | said | in | the | I said it in the heat of the moment.
1 for | Dom | are | Janet | other | and | each
2 they | think | hitched | do | you | will
3 be | trouble | could | later | storing | for | you
4 argument | walk | an | easy | it | isn’t | to | from
5 marriage | a | through | went | bad | their
6 each | they’re | other’s | in | living

3 ABOUT YOU Look at the advice in the text at the top. Do you agree with all the points? Why/why not? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B Being single

Is it fun being single?

DOZYJOE Yes! You’re free – nothing’s holding you back and no one’s nagging you because the dishes are piling up in the sink. You can do as you please any time, day or night.

RUDY Not for me. I’m bored and lonely. Yes, you answer to no one, but I’d far sooner be in a loving relationship. I’d give anything to meet the right person.

BELLA My previous boyfriend messed me around; I felt he let me down badly, and I was really hurt. Now that I’ve finished with him, the thought of going through the same thing again doesn’t bear thinking about. I don’t want another distressing break-up.

Glossary

hold sb back stop sb being as successful as they should be.
pile up increase in quantity or amount.
do as you please be able to do whatever you like. SYN please yourself.
answer to sb (for sth) have to explain your actions or decisions to sb.
mess sb around/about treat sb badly, especially by changing your mind a lot or breaking promises.
let sb down not help or support sb as they had hoped or expected.
finish with sb end a romantic relationship with sb.
not bear thinking about be too shocking or unpleasant to think about.
break-up the ending of a relationship or marriage. break up (with sb) v.

spotlight Expressing wishes

I’d (far) sooner be married. = I would (much) prefer to be married.
I’d give anything to meet her. = I would very much like to meet her.
I’d give my right arm to have Anya back. = I would very much like to have Anya back.

4 Write the opposite using an idiom or phrasal verb.

I can do whatever I want. OPP I can’t do as I please / please myself.
1 Her boyfriend treated her really well. OPP Her boyfriend treat sb well.
2 I don’t have to explain my actions to my boss. OPP I have to tell sb about sth.
3 There’s less and less work. OPP The work decrease.
4 I’ve just started going out with Pilar. OPP I’ve just start.
5 He didn’t stand in the way of my success. OPP He挡
6 She gave me the help I was hoping for. OPP She give.

5 Complete the texts with one word in each case. Then underline the full idioms, phrasal verbs, or phrasal nouns.

Danny was quite possessive, so when I (1) (2) I pleased. But not long after the (3) and I regretted what I’d done. Now I’d give (4) with him, I was relieved that at last I could do of the relationship I was terribly lonely. to have him back.

I feel guilty about Donna. I know I (5) her down badly, and I’m sure she was sick of me (6) her about. But the truth is, I’d far (7) be single and be able to please (8) in what I do. And getting married just doesn’t (9) thinking about; I’m far too selfish.

I’m sure there’s a little sign above my head that says, ‘I want to get married! I’d give my right (10) to meet Mr Right!

6 ABOUT YOU Which speaker at the top of the page do you agree with most, and why? Or do you have a different point of view? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.
8 I can talk about families

A Why do families argue?

What is it about your own flesh and blood? I’ve got two sisters. They used to fight like cat and dog when they were kids, and there’s little love lost between them now. But as soon as an outsider criticizes either of them, they immediately close ranks and turn on them. It’s a bit the same with me and my wife. When we’re together we argue, but when we’re apart, we’re miserable as sin. How do you account for that? I guess living on top of each other doesn’t help, and I’m sure we take each other for granted a lot of the time. But families are strange!

Glossary

your own flesh and blood a person or people that you are related to.
(of two people) often have angry fights.
= they don’t like each other.
fight like cat and dog If people close ranks, they join together to protect themselves,
especially when they are being criticized.
there’s little/no love lost between them attack sb suddenly and unexpectedly.
close ranks INF used to emphasize that sb is very unhappy.
turn on sb be the explanation or cause of sth.
(as) miserable as sin be so accustomed to sb that you don’t appreciate them.
account for sth
take sb for granted

spotlight on top of sb/sth

They live on top of each other. = very close to each other (which often causes problems).
He gets commission on top of his salary. = in addition to his salary.
The books were piled on top of one another. = on, over, or covering one another.

1 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning.

1 When she left him, he was so unhappy.
2 In addition to all the family problems, he’s split up with his girlfriend.
3 You can’t abandon them: they’re members of your family.
4 She suddenly attacked me for no reason.
5 His surname’s different from his brother’s. How do you explain that?
6 Living so close to one another is a problem.
7 My brothers argue bitterly all the time.
8 They don’t like each other.

2 Complete the sentences.

1 Is it true we fight more with our own
2 Did you ever fight like cat and
3 Do you think members of your family would close
4 Do you ever feel your family are living on
5 Have any members of your family ever turned
6 Do you ever

and blood? If so, why?
with any of your brothers or sisters?
if criticized?
of each other?
you? If so, why?
y any of your family for granted? If so, who?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B Being a middle child

Middle child syndrome

Being the middle child of three can result in 'middle-child syndrome'. The firstborn often gets the most attention and is put on a pedestal; the last to be born is the baby and tends to get away with murder. The middle child, though, can feel neglected, squeezed out by their siblings, and starved of attention. Some studies have backed this up, suggesting that middle children who feel left out may distance themselves from others and become loners. It is important, therefore, that parents make a point of lavishing attention on the middle child and praising their achievements. And on the positive side, studies show that the middle child is often more creative and artistic than the others.

Glossary

result in sth cause a particular situation to happen.
put sb on a pedestal admire sb so much that you do not see their faults.
get away with murder INF do whatever you want without being stopped or punished.
squeeze sb out (usually passive) If sb is squeezed out, they are no longer included in sth that they were previously involved in.
starve sb/sth of sth (usually passive) If you are starved of sth, you do not have enough of sth that you need.
back sth/sb up support sth/sb; say that what sb says or writes is true.
leave sb out not include sb.
distance yourself from sth become less involved or connected with sth.
make a point of doing sth make a special effort to do sth.
lavish sth on sb give a lot, often too much, of sth to sb.

4 One word is missing. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- It can result in serious problems. in
  1 They lavish far too much money their children.
  2 There's a danger that they will their son on a pedestal.
  3 She's very naughty; they her get with murder.
  4 Since the divorce, he's distanced from his family.
  5 No wonder the child was unhappy; she was of attention.
  6 Try to a point of praising your middle child's creativity.

5 Complete this story of one middle child.

It's true that the firstborn is put on a (1) and the third child gets away with (2) but in my case it didn't (3) of ensuring that I wasn’t squeezed (5) or (6) of attention. In fact, I craved attention and fought really hard to excel in everything. I became an underachiever.

Now, I don't feel left (7) by my parents. We have a very good relationship and I feel they (8) me up in everything I do. Mind you, they still (9) more attention on my younger sister than me. But I don't mind that now.

6 ABOUT YOU Are you the middle child of three, or do you know any middle children? If so, is there any truth in what the text says? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.
9 I can describe my emotions

A An emotional rollercoaster

Since I found out that I was pregnant, I’ve been on an emotional rollercoaster: my mood seems to change for no apparent reason. One minute I’m on top of the world, the next I’m at the end of my tether, or crying my eyes out at some silly romantic movie. I’m so short-tempered – the slightest thing winds me up. A guy in the office was tapping on the radiator earlier, and I just went off the deep end and screamed my head off at him. Poor man – I have since apologized. Pregnancy has stirred up feelings I didn’t know existed! It’s such a new experience: I guess I just need time to take it all in.

Glossary

for no apparent reason: without an obvious cause.
on top of the world: very happy or proud. OPP down in the dumps INF.
at the end of your tether: having no patience or energy left to deal with a difficult situation. SYN at your wits’ end.
cry your eyes/heart out: INF cry in an uncontrolled way and be unable to stop.
winds sb up: INF make sb angry or upset.
go off the deep end: INF suddenly become very angry or emotional.
scream/laugh/shout your head off: scream/laugh/shout very loudly.
stir sth up: make sb feel or think sth, eg anger, fear, memories. accept sth as real or true (I can’t take it all in).
take sth in

1 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

- I’m feeling really fed up. DOWN I’m feeling really down in the dumps.

1 The news is so bad that I can’t believe it. TAKE
2 The boy was making a lot of noise. HEAD
3 She couldn’t stop crying. EYES
4 I can’t deal with the situation; I’m so upset. TETHER
5 He got angry and lost his temper. DEEP
6 The news made everyone angry. STIR
7 Please don’t make her angry. WIND
8 I’m feeling extremely happy. WORLD

2 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions. Then write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 What kinds of things in life tend to wind you up?
2 What makes you feel down in the dumps?
3 Do you ever feel at your wits’ end? If so, why?
4 When did you last laugh your head off, and why?
5 When did you last go off the deep end at someone, and why?
6 Do you ever feel incredibly positive for no reason?
7 What memories would it take to see your old school?
8 Which single thing would make you feel on top of the world right now?
B Keeping emotions under control

Dealing with office disputes

As head of department, I have to deal with disputes between employees, and I absolutely cannot take sides. I try to involve both parties in the dispute, but ensure that I keep any meeting on an even keel. That's easier said than done, especially if they're dying to have a go at each other. Someone like Zoe, for instance, tends to rub her colleagues up the wrong way, and flares up at the slightest provocation. So, first I spend time alone with her. cooling her down, then I bring in whoever she has upset. It's a stressful job, and I have to keep my emotions in check. When I go home, I can pour my heart out to my husband: he doesn't mind at all!

Glossary

on an even keel
that's easier said than done
be dying to do sth / for sth
have a go at sb
rub sb up the wrong way
flare up
cool (sb) down
keep sth/sb in check
pour your heart out (to sb)

happening in a calm way, with no sudden changes or disturbances.
= that's a good idea, but difficult to achieve.
INF want to do or have sth very much.
INF attack or criticize sb.
INF do or say sth that annoys or offends sb.
I suddenly become angry (as above). 2 (of a fire) suddenly start burning more brightly.
become or make sb calmer and less excited. SYN calm (sb) down.
control sth/sb.
tell sb all your problems or feelings. OPP bottle up your feelings/emotions.

spotlight side

I can't take sides in their argument. = support one person or group and not another.
I'm on your side in this matter. = agree with you and support you.
She always sides with my brother. = agrees with him and supports him.

3 Write sentences using words from each column.

| She rubs ✓ | side | in check. |
| He poured | said | on this issue. |
| Don't take | sides | the wrong way. ✓ |
| He must keep | up | out to me. |
| Whose | me up ✓ | than done. |
| That's easier | his heart | a coffee. |
| Don't bottle | for | are you on? |
| I'm dying | his anger | your feelings. |

She rubs me up the wrong way.

4 Complete the dialogues. Then circle the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

1 Has all the chaos subsided at home? ~ Yes, we're back on an __________________________ again.
2 Does your brother support you? ~ No, he always __________________________ with my sister. It's not fair!
3 You seemed angry at the meeting. ~ Yeah, it took me ages to __________________________ afterwards.
4 Did your boss speak to you about being late? ~ Yes, he had a __________________________ me again.
5 Did you enjoy meeting Louis? ~ Oh yes, I'd been __________________________ to meet him for ages.
6 I thought he was going to explode. ~ Yeah, but somehow he kept his temper in __________________________ .
7 Why were they fighting? ~ Well, violence __________________________ up very easily in that area.
8 He needs to calm down. ~ Well, that's easier __________________________ . He's incredibly upset.
9 Don't you like Cheryl? ~ She's OK but she just rubs me __________________________ .
10 I feel so tense inside. ~ That's because you __________________________ your feelings.
I can describe physical actions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The business is in a bad state; we’ll have to roll our sleeves up and get on with it.</td>
<td>roll your sleeves up start doing a difficult or unpleasant job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Judge Wallis dealt out tough penalties for people driving without a licence.</td>
<td>deal sth out give a punishment to a person or group. SYN hand sth out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She hates her job, but she’ll have to stick it out until the end of the year.</td>
<td>stick it/sth out INF continue to do sth to the end, even though it is boring or difficult.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The new Italian Prime Minister took up his post at the weekend.</td>
<td>take sth up start a new job or have a new responsibility.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The government is propping up the ailing car industry. Do you agree with that?</td>
<td>prop sth up support sth that is in difficulty. SYN shore sth up.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I made a mess of the exam last time, so I don’t want to screw it up this time.</td>
<td>screw sth up SLANG do sth badly or spoil sth. screw-up N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When she sang, we curled up with embarrassment.</td>
<td>curl up INF become very embarrassed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We just have a few things to mop up before signing the contracts.</td>
<td>mop sth up complete or end sth by dealing with a few final details.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Tick the logical sentence ending.
   1 Jack's trousers need letting down: he's growing fast ☐ I bought a size too big for him ☐.
   2 Could you chuck this out – that cupboard will do fine ☐ we don't need it any more ☐.
   3 She screwed up the notes and put them in the bin ☐ put them in her folder ☐.
   4 I've tried propping the photo up but it keeps falling off ☐ it keeps falling over ☐.
   5 When you've rolled up the rug, it'll need hoovering ☐ it can go in the lorry ☐.
   6 Zip your bag up or someone might steal it ☐ someone might steal your wallet ☐.
   7 The cat curled up on the chair and fell asleep ☐ scratched me ☐.
   8 He was doubled up – I think he was in pain ☐ he was in danger ☐.

2 True or false? Write T or F.
   1 If you prop something up, it's because it isn't stable.
   2 If you spread something out, you get rid of it.
   3 If you zip something up, it means it was closed before.
   4 If you let something down, it's because it was too long.
   5 If you screw up an exam, it means you make a mess of it.
   6 If you have to mop some juice up, it's because you spilt it.
   7 If you're doubled over, you might be laughing or in pain.
   8 If you curl up, it means you stretch your body.
   9 If you take up a pair of trousers, you make them shorter.
   10 If you mop up the details of something, you forget about them.

3 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences. Write it in.
   1 a I'll have to ☐ this skirt up.
   b She's hoping to ☐ up her new job by Christmas.
   2 a There are a few details to ☐ up before we end the meeting.
   b Why didn't anyone ☐ up this water that's all over the floor?
   3 a I just ☐ up when she said all those embarrassing things about me.
   b I'd had an awful day, so I just went home and ☐ up in front of the TV.
   4 a That little boy ☐ out his tongue at me. What bad manners!
   b It was an awful job, but I ☐ it out for six months.
   5 a The judge decided to ☐ out a heavy sentence for the robbery.
   b Can you ☐ the playing cards out? I've hurt my hand.
   6 a Time to ☐ our sleeves up and get down to work, I think.
   b You'd better ☐ your trousers up if you're going for a walk on the beach.
   7 a I can't see why the government should ☐ up such a useless industry.
   b I tried to ☐ the fence up with some large stones, but eventually it fell over.
   8 a It's a really important meeting, so make sure you don't ☐ it up!
   b What made him ☐ up that note from the boss?

4 Complete the sentences using a phrasal verb from page 28 in a logical way.
   ▶ I think we can get the carpet in the car if we roll it up
   1 I've got another six months with this awful project. I hope I can
   2 We need to see all the photos at the same time, so you'll need to
   3 This skirt's too short, but it's easy enough to
   4 That document's really important – why on earth did you
   5 There's a lot of work to be done, so it's time to
   6 There's a lot of water on the floor. Could you
   7 He was so weak he kept falling over. I had to
   8 When my brother did that awful dance at the wedding, I just
1 Read the text, then answer the questions.

**AMAZON ADVENTURE**

As group leader, you have to choose four volunteers from the list below to accompany you on a three-week trek down the Amazon. It will be hot, difficult, and you're not sure what to expect. You need people with initiative, who will also work well as a team. Which four would you choose and why? And why wouldn’t you choose the other six?

Amy: a bright spark
Syc: tough as old boots
Mandy: a cold fish
Ollie: an unknown quantity
Don: nobody’s fool
Clive: likes the sound of his own voice
Bill: thick as two short planks
Brenda: salt of the earth
Isabel: doesn’t suffer fools gladly
Alec: a creature of habit
I would choose

I wouldn’t choose the others because

2 Complete the phrases being defined.

1 hopping very angry.
2 have a quick become angry quickly and often.
3 a nasty of work a very unpleasant person.
4 a live someone who is lively and full of energy.
5 a soft someone you can easily get money from because they’re kind.
6 mad as a strange or crazy.
7 under sb’s completely controlled by somebody else.
8 play it hide your feelings so that you appear calm and controlled.
Unit 6

1 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.
   1 He never does anything to help. FINGER
   2 She’ll do anything to get what she wants. STOP
   3 They tried very hard to help us. LENGTHS
   4 Her generosity is what makes her different. SET
   5 Call me if you need a sympathetic friend. SHOULDER
   6 My sister assumes I’m always there to help her. GRANTED

2 Complete the sentences.
   1 Does anyone ever pick you for no reason?
   2 Do you think you can stick for yourself in most situations?
   3 Can anyone twist you round their little?
   4 Who do you to when you need a to cry on?
   5 Who do you usually ask when you need someone to lend you a helping?
   6 Does anyone ever put their down to stop you getting what you want?
   7 Can you remember a time when you went out of your to help someone?
   8 Is there anyone you sometimes for granted?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

Unit 7

1 Complete the conversation.
   ANA I hear that Tina has (1) with Graham. I’m amazed – they’ve been together for a
couple of years, haven’t they?
   DOM Yeah, but I think the (2) was pretty inevitable, actually.
   ANA Why’s that?
   DOM Well, they’ve been going through a sticky (3) for a while now, and to be honest I
don’t think they’re really (4) for each other.
   ANA Well, Graham’s not an easy person. He likes to please (5) what he does, and frankly,
he’s not the kind of guy to (6) someone halfway.
   DOM Exactly. I think Tina felt he’d (7) her around long enough, and in the end, she
decided to walk (8) from the whole thing. I don’t blame her.

2 Rewrite each sentence, starting with the words given. Keep the meaning the same.
   ▶ He’s going to have to compromise with her.
   He’s going to have to meet her halfway.
   1 It happened at a time when they were too angry or excited to think carefully.
   It happened in the heat.
   2 It was money which caused them to disagree and argue so much.
   It was money which drove.
   3 It would be much nicer if you came alone.
   I’d far.
   4 They’re just spending too much time together.
   They’re just living in each.
   5 I hear they’ve decided to get married.
   I hear they’ve decided to tie.
   6 I’d love to meet George Clooney.
   I’d give.
Unit 8

1 Tick the correct sentence ending.
   1 There's no love lost between us: a) we're great friends. □ b) we just don't get on. □
   2 He always makes a point of helping; a) why is he so selfish? □ b) why is he so kind to us? □
   3 They started playing and left Michael out: a) that made him sad. □ b) that made him feel special. □
   4 Dan backed me up because a) he knew I was wrong. □ b) he knew I needed support. □
   5 Service was on top of the main charges, a) which made it more expensive. □ b) which wasn't so bad. □
   6 They always close ranks when a) there's an external threat. □ b) they're higher up. □
   7 She turned on me; a) I had expected that. □ b) I hadn't expected that. □
   8 They take Mum for granted, and a) they shouldn't do that. □ b) she likes it. □

2 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.
   ◀ She didn’t include me in the plans. LEAVE She left me out of the plans.
   1 Shan became less involved in the group. DISTANCE
   2 I gave my son a lot of praise. LAVISH
   3 Dara doesn't get any affection from her parents. STARVE
   4 He's a close relative of mine. FLESH
   5 She behaved badly and never got caught. MURDER
   6 Those kids argue all day long. CAT

Unit 9

1 Are you happy or unhappy about these situations? Write H or U.
   1 I'm at the end of my tether.
   2 She's on my side.
   3 He wound me up.
   4 The news stirred up anxiety.
   5 I'm on top of the world.
   6 He had a go at me.
   7 I'm feeling a bit down in the dumps.
   8 He went off the deep end.

2 Complete the idioms and phrasal verbs being defined.
   1 scream your off scream very loudly.
   2 that's said than done = that's a good idea, but difficult to achieve.
   3 your heart out tell sb all your problems and feelings.
   4 take support one person and not another.
   5 sb up the wrong way INF do or say sth that annoys sb.
   6 for no reason without an obvious cause.
   7 cry your out cry in an uncontrolled way.
   8 be to do sth INF want to do sth very much.
1 Use a phrasal verb to describe what you can see in each picture.

1 She's

2 She's

3 She's

4 He's

5 Somebody has

6 She's

7 I'm

8 I'm

2 Circle the correct definition.

1 If you **prop up** a company, you help a company in difficulty | inherit it.
2 If you **roll up your sleeves**, you stop doing sth | start a difficult task.
3 If you **screw sth up**, you make a mess of it | forget how to do it.
4 If you **curl up** with sth, you become very angry | embarrassed.
5 If you **stick sth out**, you continue to do sth difficult or boring | you work hard at sth.
6 If there are a few things to **mop up**, there are a few things to remember | complete.
Hi Dad

I spoke to Martin yesterday. He’d be too embarrassed to tell you this, but I think he’s **pretty much** living on the **breadline**. Last week he had to **fork out** a lot of money on his car, which he badly needs, and next month he’ll be even **worse off** when his rent goes up. The thing is, I don’t think he’s got much to **fall back on**. I said I could **lay my hands on** about £200 to help out, but he’ll need more than that to **pay off** his debts. I know he desperately wants to **pay his own way**, but would you be willing to **bail** him **out** just this once, or at least have a word with him - without saying I’d spoken to you? Thanks.

Love Tracey

---

**Glossary**

- **pretty much/well on the breadline**: INF almost. very poor; with very little money to live on.
- **fork sth out (on sth)**: INF spend a lot of money on sth, usually money you don’t want to spend. **SYN pay sth out**.
- **be worse off**: be poorer, unhappier, etc. than before. **OPP be better off**.
- **fall back on sth**: have sth to use when in difficulty (in this case money).
- **lay/get your hands on sth**: find or get sth that you want or really need.
- **pay sth off**: finish paying money that is owed for sth.
- **pay your (own) way**: pay for everything yourself without relying on others.
- **bail sb out**: rescue sb from a difficult situation, usually with money.

---

**1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.**

- I’ve always paid my **only** way. **own**
- 1 Where am I going to lay my hand on $5,000?
- 2 I had to fork over £30 just to get into the club.
- 3 He still has to pay out most of his debts.
- 4 A lot of families are living on the breadqueue.
- 5 If she spends her salary, she’ll have no money to fill back on.
- 6 Now she’s got promotion, she’ll be better on.

**2 Complete the text.**

When my daughter left university, she said she’d soon be able to pay (1) **her** debts, and then she’d (2) much be able to pay her own (3) **off**. But things didn’t work out like that. After she’d (4) out almost all her salary on rent, travel, and food, she was (5) **off** than before; and as she hadn’t saved anything at university, she had nothing to (6) **back on** – nothing. that is, except her parents. We were naturally the ones who had to (7) **out** her out.

**3 ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences. Then decide if you agree with them. Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.**

1 You should always **pay** your debts as soon as possible.
2 Once you leave home, you should **lay your hands on** money fast, you should borrow it from a member of your family. That’s what families are for:
3 If you need to **lay your hands on** some money fast, you should borrow it from a member of your family. That’s what families are for:
4 Governments should give more to people who are on **pay**.
B Financial investment

TOP TIPS for investing in the stock market

- Don't invest more than you can afford, or you could land yourself in trouble.
- Don't invest off your own bat – seek proper financial advice first.
- Err on the side of caution if you don't have a lot of money to play with.
- Don't let all the jargon put you off – you'll pick it up as time goes by.
- Once you've bought stocks, hold on to them for a while. Fast trading can be expensive.
- Don't forget to add on the fees you will have to pay: this could come to 3 or 4 per cent.
- Don't expect your investments to bear fruit immediately – you need patience.
- Remember shares go down as well as up. So go into it with your eyes open.

Glossary

land sb/yourself in sth INF get sb/yourself into a difficult situation.
off your own bat INF If you do sth off your own bat, it is your idea and you do it without help from others.
err on the side of caution be careful and not take many risks.
have money/time, etc. to play with have enough money/time, etc. for doing sth.
as time goes by as time passes.
hold on to / onto sth keep sth; not give or sell sth to sb else.
add sth on (to sth) include sth extra. add-on N.
come to sth add up to a total amount (The bill came to £50).
bear fruit have a successful result.
with your eyes open knowing that there could be problems in a situation.

spotlight put sb off (sth)

The accident put her off driving. = made her dislike it (as above).
It's too late to put him off. = postpone or cancel the arrangement I made with him.
Don't put me off when I'm working. = disturb or distract me.

4 Put the words into correct sentences.

1 the | err | on | should | side | you | caution | of
2 it | eyes | went | I | with | open | my | into
3 he | an | own | his | account | bat | off | opened
4 could | himself | in | trouble | he | land
5 she | her | to | shares | held | on | oil
6 play | don't | much | with | money | we | to | have

5 Complete the texts.

'The shares were going to cost me just under £800, but once you (1) on the broker's fee at 2 per cent, and the management fee, it (2) to a bit more than £800.'

'My broker told me not to expect shares to bear (3) immediately, but he said they would go up as time (4) by, and that would give me more money to (5) with.'

'I knew the shares were a bit risky and that (6) me off. I'm afraid I always (7) on the side of caution; that's my nature. My cousin is the complete opposite. He invested £5,000 entirely off his own (8) , with no financial advice at all.'
I can talk about wealth and poverty

A Wealth

You may think that some people have more money than sense, and in my brother’s case, you’d be right. He’s a city trader living life in the fast lane, and he thinks nothing of spending £1,000 just on a night out. Michelin-star restaurants don’t come cheap, and when you splash out on expensive wines as well, a meal alone can cost an arm and a leg – and that’s before he’s even set foot inside the casino. As far as he’s concerned, money’s no object, and he can lose vast sums in a matter of seconds. Would I fancy living in the lap of luxury like him? No, not really.

Glossary

have more money than sense
live life in the fast lane
think nothing of (doing) sth
not come cheap
splash out (on sth)
cost an arm and a leg
set foot in/on/inside sth
money is no object
in the lap of luxury

have a lot of money and spend it stupidly.
If sb lives life in the fast lane, they live a life full of activity and excitement. consider an activity to be normal that most people would think was difficult, unusual, etc.
= be expensive.
INF spend an unusually large sum of money on sth.
INF be very expensive.
enter a place.
used to say that sb has a lot of money and can buy what they want.
in the easy and comfortable conditions that result from being wealthy.

A matter of seconds/minutes/days, etc. is used to emphasize how short a period of time is.
The books you ordered should arrive in a matter of days.
It was only a matter of minutes before he returned.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 If you think nothing of doing something, it means you are not interested in it.
2 If money is no object, you are able to spend a lot.
3 If you say ‘in a matter of weeks’, you are saying that something will take quite a long time.
4 If you splash out on something, you take care of how much you are spending.
5 If you live in the lap of luxury, you live in very comfortable conditions.
6 If you live life in the fast lane, you are always moving from one place to another.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Why did she buy that ugly big house? ~ Because she’s got more money than 
2 I’ll bet that boat was expensive. ~ Yes, it was. It cost an arm and a 
3 Did you have to wait a long time? ~ No, just a of minutes.
4 Why are you saving up? ~ I’m going to out on a luxury holiday in New York.
5 School books are expensive, aren’t they? ~ Yes, they don’t 
6 You’ve been to the Ritz before, haven’t you? ~ No, I’ve never 

3 ABOUT YOU Would you enjoy life in the fast lane? Would you like to live in the lap of luxury? Why/why not? When was the last time you splashed out on something? What was it? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B Poverty

I met Don at a centre for homeless people. He'd been living beyond his means and found himself in arrears with his rent. Then he lost his job and got caught up in a downward spiral that led to him becoming homeless. His only real possession was a guitar, with which he managed to earn a bit of money from busking, but he was living from hand to mouth. He told me he knew of a room going cheap somewhere in Paddington, and if he could just put aside a bit of money, he might be able to put down a deposit. Sadly though, the last I heard, Don had been arrested for stealing. His prospects are not good to say the least, but it's the same old story for many people like him living on the streets.

Glossary

live beyond your means | spend more money than you earn.
be/get caught up in sth | become involved in sth which may cause problems.
live from hand to mouth | have just enough money or food to stay alive.
going cheap | If sth is going cheap, it is available at a lower price than usual.
put sth aside | save or keep sth for future use.
put down a deposit | pay some money to reserve sth, before paying for it in full.
the last I heard | used to give the most recent news you have about sth.
to say the least | used to say you could have described sth in a much stronger and more extreme way.
it's the same old story | used to say that the present bad situation has often happened before.

spotlight in arrears (with sth)

If you are in arrears with your rent or other payments, you are late paying the money that you owe. This phrase is slightly formal; a more informal way to say it is I got behind with the rent/my payments.

4 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- You should always put some money aside in case of emergencies.
  1 I heard she got with her mortgage payments; she owes over €1000.
  2 They've been living from hand to mouth for months now.
  3 As soon as he gets any money, he wastes it; it's the same story.
  4 He's lucky to be alive, say the least.
  5 I bought these shoes because they were going.
  6 Where's Joe? ~ The last heard, he was in Scotland.
  7 He's been living his means.
  8 You have to put a deposit if you want to keep the flat.

5 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

- That's the most recent news I have of him. LAST That's the last I heard of him.
  1 He got involved in something illegal. CAUGHT
  2 He's late paying his rent. ARREARS
  3 I'm saving €100 a month. ASIDE
  4 She paid a £25 deposit. PUT
  5 This happens over and over again. STORY
  6 She's spending more than she earns. MEANS
**A nasty bug**

**LAURA** Steph, are you OK? You’re not your usual self today.

**STEPH** No. I’m a bit off-colour, actually. I felt like death warmed up when I woke up this morning. I had a splitting headache, and I thought I was going to throw up. I just keeled over and nearly passed out!

**LAURA** Oh, no! Poor you. Do you want something for your headache?

**STEPH** It’s OK; I took some tablets and it’s just starting to wear off. I really hope I’m not coming down with flu.

**LAURA** Well, there’s a nasty bug going round at the moment - you could have picked it up anywhere. You’d better take things easy for a day or two.

**Glossary**

- **you’re not your usual/normal self**
  - you’re not looking or behaving as you usually do.
- **off-colour**
  - INF looking or feeling ill. SYN under the weather INF.
- **feel/look like death warmed up**
  - INF feel or look very ill or tired.
- **throw up**
  - vomit; be sick.
- **keel over**
  - INF fall over, especially when you feel ill.
- **pass out**
  - faint; lose consciousness for a short time. SYN black out. OPP come round.
- **wear off**
  - (of a pain, feeling, or effect) gradually disappear or stop.
- **come/go down with sth**
  - get one of the common illnesses (flu, a cold, etc.).
- **go round**
  - spread from person to person. (A rumour can also go round.)
- **pick sth up**
  - INF catch an infectious illness. (Also pick up a bug INF bug = bacterium or virus.)
- **take things/it easy**
  - relax and avoid working hard or doing too much.

1. **Circle the correct answer.**
   1. If you’re under the weather, you are depressed | off-colour.
   2. If you think you’re going to throw up, you should go to bed | the bathroom.
   3. If you pass out, you know | don’t know what is happening around you at that moment.
   4. If you think you’re coming down with something, you’re starting to feel tired | unwell.
   5. If you pick up a virus, you become ill | feel better.
   6. If you keel over, you will definitely fall over | black out.

2. **One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.**
   1. I banged my elbow last week, and the pain is only just starting to off now.
   2. I had a terrible night, and I feel like death warmed this morning.
   3. I think I’m coming with a cold. What shall I take for it?
   4. Her face went white as a sheet and she suddenly blacked out; it was terrifying.
   5. If you’re feeling a bit under the weather, you’d better it easy today.
   6. He’s not his self today. What’s the matter with him?

3. **ABOUT YOU Complete the sentences. Then write your answers in your notebook, or discuss with another student.**
   1. When did you last feel under the ? What was wrong with you?
   2. Have you ever blacked out and then round in front of a lot of people?
   3. Is there a bug round where you live at the moment?
   4. If you’re feeling -colour, do you always take things ?

38 Everyday life
B  Major and minor illness

... After the operation Dad seemed to be on the mend, but he suddenly took a turn for the worse and started to go downhill. It was touch-and-go for a while, but the doctors reassured us that he would pull through. He’s doing OK now, touch wood, ...

... I woke up feeling out of sorts and my eyes were incredibly itchy. When I looked in the mirror, I saw that they had swollen up, and I also noticed I’d come out in a rash on my neck. After a while, the swelling went down, but the rash hasn’t gone away. I’d better see the doctor and get it checked out. Better safe than sorry. ...

Glossary

on the mend  INF getting better after an illness or injury.
take a turn for the worse/better suddenly become worse/better.
go downhill get worse in health, quality, etc.
it is touch-and-go (whether) INF = it’s very uncertain whether sth will happen or not.
pull through (sth) get better after a life-threatening illness or operation.
feel/be out of sorts feel/be ill or bad-tempered.
swell up (of part of the body) become bigger in size. OPP go down.
come out in sth become covered in spots or a rash.
go away disappear.
check sth out find out if sth is safe, correct, or acceptable.

spotlight Sayings

I think my back is OK now – touch wood! Said in order to avoid bad luck; the speaker will often touch something made of wood when they say this.
Let’s get some malaria tablets – better safe than sorry. = it is wiser to act safely than to act carelessly and later regret it. Also ... to be on the safe side.

4 Good news or bad news? Write G O B.

1 She's on the mend.
2 He didn’t pull through the operation.
3 I’ve come out in spots.
4 It’s touch-and-go at the moment.
5 She’s feeling out of sorts.
6 The symptoms have gone away.
7 She’s going downhill.
8 Mum’s taken a turn for the better.

5 Complete the dialogues.

1 You’d better ask the doctor about that. ~ Yes, you’re right. Better safe than ... down on the mend.
2 Is the dog any better? ~ No, it downhill very quickly, and I’m afraid it died.
3 Shall I bring some bandages on holiday? ~ Yes, just to be on the safe ... up immediately.
4 Have you got over the operation? ~ Mmm, things seem to be fine now – touch ... out.
5 It was a bee sting, wasn’t it? ~ Yes. It started to ... for a while.
6 I’ve got a mark on my skin. ~ Probably nothing, but you’d better get it ... down now. ~ Yes, it’s much better, thanks.
7 I’ve still got this cough. ~ Yes, it can take ages for these things to go ... now.
A Driving irritations

• You come out of a shop to find that another car has double-parked and blocked you in.
• You’re in a steady stream of traffic, but there’s always someone trying to cut in in front of you.
• Someone flags you down. You pull over to help, but all they want is directions!
• You know that getting from A to B is two kilometres as the crow flies, but after going round various one-way systems, you end up driving ten.
• A friend asks for a lift into town. You know the traffic is murder at this time of the day, and they want you to drop them off in the most difficult place.
• You have an important appointment and you’re cutting it fine, but the person in front of you insists on driving at a snail’s pace.
• You are miles from anywhere (and lost), and there are no signposts giving directions.

Glossary

block sb/sth in stop sb from moving their car out of a place.
cut in (on sth/sb) (of a vehicle or driver) move suddenly in front of another vehicle, leaving little space between the two vehicles.
flag sb down signal to a driver to stop by waving at them.
pull over move to the side of the road to stop or let sth pass.
get from A to B travel from one place to another.
as the crow flies in a straight line.
be murder INF (of a situation) be difficult and unpleasant.
drop sb off stop driving so that a passenger can get out of your car.
cut it/things fine INF leave yourself only a very short amount of time to do sth.
at a snail’s pace very slowly.
miles from anywhere INF in the countryside, a long way from a town.

1 Complete the text.

It’s only two miles from home to my office as the (1) flies, but the traffic in town is always (2) in the mornings, and everything moves at a (3) pace. I was (4) it fine on that morning as I had to (5) a neighbour off at the station before getting to work for an early meeting. In my impatience I (6) in on the person in front of me when I was trying to overtake. Unfortunately, a policeman saw what happened and (7) me down. I (8) over, worrying about what he’d say. Luckily it was just a caution.

2 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps the same meaning.

1 I want to travel from one place to another as quickly as possible.
2 The traffic is extremely unpleasant during the rush hour.
3 In a straight line, it’s about two miles to the motorway from here.
4 Another car parked too close and prevented me from driving away.
5 If you want to get there by 7.00, you’re not leaving yourself much time.
6 The village is in the countryside and a long way from town.

3 ABOUT YOU How would you feel, and how would you react, if you were in the situations at the top of the page? Write in your notebook, or talk to another student.
A metaphorical journey

Some idioms derived from roads and transport describe progress, or the lack of it, and the future.

Duncan feels that if the company can **step up a gear**, then a couple of years **further down the road**, who knows? They could be one of the biggest firms in the south west.

Now the council’s **given us** the **green light** for the shopping and leisure centre, let’s hope the new development **will** really **put** Barnwood **on the map**.

It’s **the end of the road** for Ken’s little corner shop now the supermarket has opened next door. The shop’s barely **ticking over**, and at 70, poor Ken’s **running out of steam**.

Colin’s **gone off the rails** recently and I’ve already given him one warning. I had enough problems with Rob last month, so I don’t want to have to **go down that road again** with Colin.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Glossary</strong></th>
<th><strong>Meaning</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>step/move up a gear</strong></td>
<td>start working more effectively or faster (also <strong>in top gear</strong> = working very fast and effectively).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>(further) down the road</strong></td>
<td>INF used to talk about the future and what might happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>give (sb/sth) the green light</strong></td>
<td>give (sb/sth) permission to sth. (See spotlight.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>put sth/sb on the map</strong></td>
<td>make sth/sb famous or important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>the end of the road/line</strong></td>
<td>the point at which sth can no longer continue in the same way. (usually used in the progressive) (of a business) keep working, without producing or achieving much. (See spotlight.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tick over</strong></td>
<td>lose your energy and enthusiasm. (See spotlight.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>run out of steam</strong></td>
<td>INF start behaving in a wild or unacceptable way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>go off the rails</strong></td>
<td>take a particular course of action.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight** Literal meanings

When a car is **ticking over**, the engine is running but the car is not moving. The **green light** refers to a traffic light (green = go). Early trains were powered by steam engines; this became a source of several idioms, such as **run out of steam**.

4 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1. We’ve been given the green light.  4. It will put us on the map.
2. The company is barely ticking over.  5. They’ve moved up a gear.
3. He’s run out of steam.  6. She’s gone off the rails.

5 Answer the questions.

1. What do you have to move up in order to work faster?
2. What light do you need to go forwards?
3. What is a car doing if the engine is running but it’s not moving?
4. What have you reached if something can no longer continue?
5. What does a person go off when they start behaving wildly?
6. What do you run out of when you lose your enthusiasm for something?

6 Paraphrase the sentences on the left, starting with the words you are given.

1. **They’ve given us permission to start.** They’ve given us
2. **We won’t take that course of action.** We won’t go
3. **It will make us famous.** It will put
4. **We’re finished as a company.** Our company has reached
5. **We’re starting to work faster.** We’re stepping
6. **We might feel differently in the future.** We might feel differently further
15 I can talk about eating

A What shall we have?

Shall we grab a bite to eat? ~ Yeah, I'm starving. I could eat a horse!

Would you like some more lasagne? ~ No, thanks. It was delicious but I'm full up.

Jo just picks at her food. ~ Yeah, she eats like a bird. She's on some strange diet.

Gosh, that fish soup smells fabulous. ~ Yeah, it's making my mouth water.

Aren't there any leftovers? ~ No, the boys polished them off.

How did you hear about this restaurant? ~ Just by word of mouth.

What a great meal. ~ Yes, it was lovely. Anyway, we'd better be going. I'll settle up.

How was dinner? ~ I left it in the oven and it was burnt to a crisp, unfortunately.

Glossary

- **a bite (to eat)** INF a small meal (grab/have a bite (to eat)).
- **be full (up)** have had enough to eat.
- **pick at sth** eat only small amounts of food because you are not hungry.
- **make your mouth water** If food makes your mouth water it looks or smells so good you want to eat it immediately. ADJ mouth-watering.
- **leftovers** PL N food remaining from a meal after you have eaten (be left over (from sth)).
- **polish sth off** INF finish sth, especially food, very quickly.
- **by word of mouth** through people telling each other and not through newspapers, advertisements, etc.
- **settle up (with sb)** pay what you owe on a bill or an account.
- **burn sth to a crisp/cinder** cook sth for too long or with too much heat, so that it burns.

Idioms with horse

- **I could eat a horse!** = I'm very hungry.
- **She eats like a horse.** = eats a lot. OPP eat like a bird.

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word.

- The cake was delicious but I'm completely filled up, thanks. **full**
- 1 There was some chocolate in the fridge but Sam cleaned it all off.
- 2 If you manage to catch the waiter's eye, we can set up with him.
- 3 I'm absolutely starving - I could eat a house!
- 4 We might try and grab a mouth to eat before the cinema.
- 5 I can't eat this toast - it's burnt to a chip!
- 6 Just talking about that dish Mum made is making my taste water.
- 7 He's got an enormous appetite; he eats like a mouse!
- 8 I get all my new clients by word or mouth.

2 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

- Are you very hungry? ~ Yes, I could eat a horse!
- 1 She hardly eats anything, does she? ~ No, she just
- 2 Would you like some more pie? ~ No, I really couldn't. I'm
- 3 Did you eat everything up? ~ No, look in the fridge. I think there are some
- 4 Do you advertise your restaurant? ~ No, all our customers come
- 5 Jon's very greedy. ~ Yeah, but his sister's the opposite. She eats
- 6 Shall we pay the bill? ~ Yeah, but don't worry. I'll
- 7 It's nearly lunchtime. ~ Yeah, let's go and grab
### Metaphors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Illustration</th>
<th>Idiom</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>This new phone’s the best thing since sliced bread!</td>
<td>the best/greatest thing since sliced bread sth you think is excellent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>She thinks the world of him; he’ll have her eating out of his hand.</td>
<td>have sb eating out of your hand make sb like you so much they agree to everything you say.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>If this plan fails, I’ll have egg on my face.</td>
<td>have egg on your face be embarrassed because sth you tried to do went wrong.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>My last job was hard enough but this one is awful - it’s out of the frying pan, into the fire!</td>
<td>out of the frying pan, (and) into the fire used to say that sb who was in a bad situation is now in an even worse situation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>That boy’s a real couch potato!</td>
<td>couch potato INF a person who spends too much time watching TV.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>He’ll never cope in that job. He’s bitten off more than he can chew.</td>
<td>bite off more than you can chew try to do too much or do sth that is too difficult.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>She tells lies and then acts as if butter wouldn’t melt in her mouth.</td>
<td>butter wouldn’t melt (in sb’s mouth) used to say that sb looks innocent, kind, etc. but really they are not.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>He’s one of these businessmen who’s got a finger in every pie.</td>
<td>have a finger in every pie INF be involved and influential in a lot of different activities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>I shouldn’t have left her, but it’s no use crying over spilt milk.</td>
<td>cry over spilt milk waste time worrying about sth that has already happened and that cannot be changed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image.png" alt="Image" /></td>
<td>He’s 65 but he’s still full of beans.</td>
<td>full of beans having a lot of energy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Match the Idioms with the Topics in the Box

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>energy</th>
<th>TV</th>
<th>having influence</th>
<th>regret ✓</th>
<th>looking foolish</th>
<th>events getting worse</th>
<th>seeming innocent</th>
<th>being overambitious</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✓ cry over spilt milk</td>
<td>✓ regret</td>
<td>✓ have a finger in every pie</td>
<td>✓ bite off more than you can chew</td>
<td>✓ full of beans</td>
<td>✓ out of the frying pan, into the fire</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Complete the Sentences with an Appropriate Idiom from the Table Above

1. He can lie but look completely sweet and innocent. **Butter wouldn’t melt (in his mouth).**
2. It’s a wonderful invention; in fact, it’s.
3. She’s taken on too much work; in fact, she’s.
4. I know she’ll do whatever he wants; he’s got her.
5. There’s nothing you can do to put it right, so it’s no use.
6. If the new scheme doesn’t work, the politicians will have.
7. He’s in front of the TV all day long; he’s just.
8. I thought things were bad, but then this happened! Out.
9. She recovered quickly from the operation and now she’s.
DEZI I wasn’t very good at English when I started, but it wasn’t for want of trying. I worked really hard night after night, but I couldn’t make head or tail of the grammar, and it really held me back. Then one day things just seemed to make sense, and I started showing signs of improvement. My teacher says it’s all part of the learning process. I hope she’s right.

MATTEI For a long time I did next to nothing, until my teacher told me one day that if I didn’t pull my socks up, I’d fail my English exams and then I’d have nothing to show for three or four years’ studying. So, I decided to turn over a new leaf. I really began to apply myself, and I’m pleased to say I’ve just passed my university exams with flying colours.

ORLA One of my problems is that I make silly mistakes in my writing, and I only just scraped through my last exam. My teacher’s always telling me off for this, and says I should check my work carefully as a matter of routine. She’s right, because if I don’t cut out the errors, I’ll be marked down in the next exam.

URSULA I went to the States three summers running, and that helped me a lot. My English came on in leaps and bounds as a result.
1 Is the speaker pleased or unhappy with these situations? Write P or U.
1 The teacher marked me down.
2 I’ll have to pull my socks up.
3 My English is coming on.
4 I’ve cut out the errors.
5 My pronunciation is holding me back.
6 I passed with flying colours.
7 The grammar goes over my head.
8 My son has turned over a new leaf.

2 Complete the dialogues. Then circle the whole idiom or phrasal verb.

Was the dictionary expensive? ~ No, it was second hand, so it cost next to nothing.
1 Did she get through the exam? ~ Yes, she passed with flying colours.
2 Ben’s not doing well at school, is he? ~ No, but it’s not for want of trying.
3 Was the teacher annoyed with you? ~ Yes, she told me off.
4 Did you understand the lecture? ~ No, I’m afraid it went over my head.
5 He’s got to work harder, hasn’t he? ~ Yes, he needs to pull his socks up.
6 Is the writing preventing him from getting better? ~ Yes, it’s definitely holding him back.
7 Are the boys getting better? ~ Yes, they’re showing signs of improvement.
8 Is Mariko actually doing some work now? ~ Yes, she turned over a new leaf.
9 How did you do in the exam? ~ I did badly, I think they gave me a mark down for my spelling.
10 Can you understand this article? ~ No, I can’t make head or tail of it.
11 Did you check your spelling? ~ Yes, I used the spelling checker on the computer as a matter of routine.
12 Is Gary working hard enough? ~ No, he’ll have to pull his socks up.

3 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning.

I was given a lower grade in the exam for lack of clarity. marked down
1 His English is getting better.
2 I can’t understand this at all.
3 She worked every night for a long period of time.
4 This dictionary cost me hardly anything.
5 I only just passed my exams.
6 His lack of qualifications is stopping him from being more successful.
7 I need to stop making these silly mistakes if I want to improve.
8 My brother went to Japan three years ago, and again two years ago, and again last year.
9 I could do well, but I need to work harder.
10 She’s worked hard at her tennis and she’s progressing very quickly.

4 Complete the sentences.
1 Has a teacher ever taken you off in class? If so, what for?
2 Has a teacher ever told you that you need to pull your socks up? If so, why?
3 Have you passed any exams with flying colours? If so, which ones?
4 Do you feel your English:
   a) is coming in leaps and bounds?  
   b) is showing signs of getting worse?
5 When you’re studying, are there certain things you always do as a matter of routine?
6 Do you feel you have a lot to look forward to for the years you’ve been learning English?

5 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 4 in your notebook, or ask another student.
A How to do well at work

Tips to help you get on at work

- First, you need to get your foot in the door.
- Learn to take things in your stride whatever happens.
- Don’t pin your hopes on others. If necessary, have the courage to go it alone.
- Don’t put all your eggs in one basket – try to keep your options open.
- Keep in with your colleagues – you may need their support.
- Keep your ear to the ground – you hear important things on the grapevine.
- If you can make a name for yourself, things will get easier.
- Always keep your feet on the ground.

Glossary

get your/a foot in the door  get your first opportunity to work for an organization or business, which could later bring you success.

take sth/things in your stride accept and deal with sth difficult without letting it worry you.

pin (all) your hopes on sb/sth hope that sb will help you or that sth will happen because all your plans depend on this.

go it alone do sth without help from anyone.

put all your eggs in one basket rely on only one thing for success, having no other possibilities if sth goes wrong. OPP keep your options open.

keep in with sb stay friends with sb because you think you will benefit from it.

keep your ear to the ground make sure you find out about recent developments in a particular situation.

on the grapevine by talking in an informal way to other people.

make a name for yourself become well known and respected by many people.

keep your feet on the ground have a sensible and realistic attitude.

1 Cover the glossary. Then form complete idioms from the key words.

1. pin | hopes  pin your hopes on sb/sth
2. take | stride
3. get | foot | door
4. put | eggs | basket
5. keep | feet | ground
6. make | name

2 Complete the text.

Sandra got her (1) in the door when she was very young, and once she started at Berwick’s, she took everything in her (2) and quickly made a (3) for herself. She was offered jobs in other cities, but wanted to keep her (4) open by staying in London where she could keep her ear to the (5) and wait for something really exciting to come up. She was (6) her hopes on getting a top job with C&M, and when she heard on the (7) that they wanted someone to run the Singapore office, she applied for it and got it. In a couple more years, she’ll have enough experience to go it (8) if she wants to, but I know she has continued to (9) in with her old colleagues at Berwick’s, so who knows where she’ll end up.

3 ABOUT YOU Which is the best single piece of advice in the text at the top? Do you disagree with any of it? Write your answers or talk to another student.
B The production line

I've been at Benhams close on twenty years. People now just think of me as part of the furniture. I got the push from my first job in a solicitor’s office – my face didn’t fit. Then I came here, and was lucky to meet Cynthia, who took me under her wing and showed me the tricks of the trade – things I now pass on to the younger girls. Some would say it’s a dead-end job, and it’s true that it’s not a career, but standing at a machine eight hours a day still takes some doing. The bosses don’t throw their weight around with me either; they know I always do a good day’s work, and that’s enough for me.

Glossary

close on (used with time, age, distance, etc.) almost; very nearly (He's close on 60). A person who is part of the furniture is so familiar to you that you no longer notice them.
part of the furniture
sb’s face doesn’t fit used to say that sb won’t get or keep a job because they are not the kind of person that the employer wants.
take sb under your wing look after sb who has less experience than you.
the tricks of the trade the clever ways of doing things in a particular job.
pass sth on (to sb) give sth to sb else (in this case, knowledge of the job), especially after receiving it yourself.
dead-end job a boring job with no hope of promotion.
take some doing INF be difficult to do, or involve a lot of effort or time.
throw your weight around/about INF tell people what to do in a bossy way.

spotlight Being dismissed

There are several informal idioms that mean to be dismissed from a job.
I got the push/boot/elbow. OR They gave me the push/boot/elbow.

4 Correct the mistake in each sentence.
1 You need someone to show you the tricks of the business.
2 I've been there all my life, so I'm some of the furniture.
3 It's a hard job and it'll make some doing.
4 The boss tells me what to do, and I pass it through to the others.
5 It was lucky for me that Mary took me under her arm and helped me.
6 Simone has worked here close by ten years.
7 He was lazy, so he got the pull.
8 He's very bossy and likes to throw his size about.

5 Complete the dialogues with one or two words.
1 It's a tough job. ~ Yes, it'll take
2 They didn't like you, then. ~ No, my face didn't
3 He uses his position in an aggressive way. ~ Yes, he likes to throw his
4 There are no real prospects for Jun at the office. ~ No, it's a dead
5 They haven't sacked you, have they? ~ Yes, I got the
6 I'm finding it difficult. ~ Don't worry. You'll soon learn
7 Does Maurice always help newcomers? ~ Yes, he takes them under
8 Roy's been there since the company started. ~ Yeah, he's part of the

Everyday life 47
A company in trouble

Government refuses to shore up ailing van company LEV

HOPES RISE OF A MANAGEMENT BUYOUT OF LEV

MANAGEMENT BUYOUT FALLS THROUGH

Buyer for stricken LEV company emerges at the eleventh hour

FUTURE OF LEV SECURED, THANKS TO WESTRUN AND £5M GOVERNMENT BAILOUT

FUTURE OF LEV HANGS IN THE BALANCE ONCE AGAIN

LEV takeover on the verge of collapse

Westrun pulls out of proposed takeover of LEV

Unions warn government not to stand aside and watch 850 jobs go to the wall

Glossary

shore sth up help to support sth that is weak or going to collapse. SYN prop sth up.
management buyout a situation in which the managers of a company gain control by buying most of its shares. buy sb out v.
fall through If a deal or plan falls through, it does not happen.
at the eleventh hour at the last possible moment.
thanks to sb/sth used to say that sth has happened because of sb/sth.
bailout an act of giving money to a business, economy, etc. to save it from collapse. bail sb out v.
hang in the balance If the future of sth hangs in the balance, it is uncertain.
on the verge of (doing) sth very near to the moment when sth happens or sb does sth.
pull out of (stg) withdraw from an arrangement; stop being involved in sth. pull-out.
stand aside not get involved in sth.
go to the wall INF (of an organization) fail because of lack of money.

1 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.
1 The deal isn’t going to happen now. FALL
2 We survived because of the government. THANKS
3 Michael White is about to resign. VERGE
4 There are fears that the company could fail. WALL
5 A management buyout emerged at the last possible moment. HOUR
6 Their future looks uncertain. HANGS
7 The government will rescue them financially. BAIL
8 The company had withdrawn from the deal. PULL

2 Complete the text.
The proposed management (1) of Wilson Dowling was (2) in the balance last night, as it emerged that the government was threatening to (3) of the deal altogether. Originally the government had agreed to support the management team with a £20m rescue package, and promised that it would not (4) aside and let the 200-year-old company (5) to the wall. However, last night that deal was on the (6) of falling (7). It seems the transport minister is now concerned that the £20m (8) will not be sufficient, and the government might have to (9) up the company with a much larger rescue package.
A  A success story

When I started selling my cheese, I thought I was being paid the going rate, but I soon realized that supermarkets were playing one supplier off against another to get the lowest price. So, I decided to cut out the middleman and sell direct to the public. As it happens, I was in the right place at the right time because local street markets were gaining in popularity, and my decision soon paid off – the business was a roaring success. In a short space of time I trebled my income, but I made sure I didn’t rest on my laurels. I ploughed the profits back into the company and expanded, and I’m proud to say that five years on, the company is still going strong.

Glossary

the going rate (for sth)  the usual amount paid for goods and services.
play sb off against sb  make two people or groups compete with each other in order to give yourself an advantage.
cut out the middleman  sell your produce directly to the public instead of selling it to a retailer (the middleman), who then sells it to the public.
be in the right place at the right time  be somewhere at a time when you can take advantage of an opportunity.
pay off  INF (of a plan or action) be successful and bring good results.
a roaring success  INF a great success.
in/within a short space of time  before much time has passed.
rest on your laurels  be so satisfied with your achievements that you stop trying to achieve more. (See page 162.)
plough sth back (in/into sth)  put money made as a profit back into a business in order to improve it.
be going strong  INF be doing well and being successful.

1  Tick the correct sentences. Cross out the words which are not necessary in the incorrect sentences.

1  We were profitable within a short space of the time.
2  Profits were down so we decided to cut out of the middleman.
3  They tried to play us off against one another.
4  It’s important you don’t rest up on your laurels.
5  We were fortunate to be in the right place at the right time.
6  The company has been going on strong for years.
7  We made healthy profits last year so we ploughed them all back into the company.
8  She hasn’t been getting the going pay rate for her work.

2  Complete the idiom or phrasal verb in each sentence.

1  If we sell direct to the public, we can cut out the .
2  Sometimes you just need to be in the right place .
3  The company started doing well within a short .
4  We’ve been very profitable, but we mustn’t rest .
5  The business has been a roaring .
6  I don’t want to be overpaid, but I expect to be paid the going .
7  Changing the marketing policy was tough at first, but eventually it paid .
8  The company has been very successful, and after 20 years it’s still going .
B Reasons for failure

In retrospect, things started to go wrong even when we were doing quite well.

- You need to keep one step ahead of your competitors; we didn’t do that.
- We had the opportunity to expand, but we were complacent and missed the boat.
- We deluded ourselves into thinking we would never go bankrupt.
- Overseas producers started flooding the market with cheap goods, and we couldn’t compete.
- When things got difficult we tried cutting corners; it proved a false economy.
- When we realized we were in deep water, it took us ages to cut our losses and sell up.
- Looking back, I think our staff structure was top-heavy.

Glossary

in retrospect
when thinking about a past event or situation from the perspective of the present.

keep/stay one step/jump ahead of sb
keep an advantage over sb, especially your competitors.

miss the boat
miss an opportunity to do sth.

delude yourself (into doing sth)
choose to believe sth that is not true.

flood the market
produce sth in such large quantities that competing products suffer. DISAPPROVING do sth in the easiest, cheapest, or quickest way in order to save time or money.

cut corners

false economy
an action that is intended to save money but which actually costs you more.

be in / get (sb) into deep water
be in / get (sb) into a serious or difficult situation.

cut your losses
stop doing sth that you can see is going to be unsuccessful before the situation gets worse.

sell up
sell most of what you own, especially your house or business.

top-heavy
having too many people in senior positions and not enough workers.

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 It was a great opportunity but I’m afraid we missed the train | boat.
2 In | By retrospect, it was not the right decision.
3 We’ve always tried to keep one step | jump ahead of our competitors.
4 I’m afraid the company was top-heavy | too heavy.
5 Selling the other shop was a false | wrong economy.
6 We could be in deep waters | water if we don’t increase our sales.
7 It’s a big mistake to cut a corner | corners.
8 In the end we decided to cut our losses and sell up | sell out.

4 Answer the questions.

1 If you have missed the boat, what have you missed exactly?
2 Why would someone want to cut their losses?
3 If you use the phrase ‘in retrospect,’ what are you talking about?
4 How would you probably feel if your main competitor flooded the market?
5 If you were in deep water, would you want to get out of it?
6 What are two obvious ways to cut corners if you run a café?
Companies fighting back

City analysts were caught on the hop yesterday when the Big Deal DIY chain announced that profits were up by 5 per cent. It is thought that DIY is making a comeback during the recession as people do up their own homes rather than bringing in the professionals.

Also doing rather well is the bicycle manufacturer Raleigh. Bicycle sales had fallen off in recent decades, and after being in the doldrums for a number of years, Raleigh had to slim down considerably. However, they too are bucking the trend as more people give up their cars and opt for bicycles instead. The company is now hoping to branch out in an attempt to get new customers, as well as win back some old customers.

Glossary

- **catch sb on the hop**: INF surprise sb by doing sth they are not expecting.
  - If sth makes a comeback, it becomes popular and successful again. **come back** v (e.g. come back into fashion).
- **make a comeback**: repair and decorate a room or building.
- **do sth up**: ask sb to do a particular job or be involved in sth.
- **bring sb in**: decrease in quantity or quality.
- **fall off**: (of a business) not be growing or doing well. See page 162.
- **be in the doldrums**: succeed in doing sth where most others are failing.
- **buck the trend**: start to do a new activity, especially in business.
- **branch out (into sth)**: get or have again sb/sth that you had before.
- **win sb/sth back**: See page 162.

**spotlight Food and dieting metaphors**

Verbs related to food and dieting are used metaphorically in business.

- **The firm had to slim down.** = cut the number of jobs and become smaller.
- **Rising oil costs are eating into our profit.** = using up a part of our profit.

3 Good news or bad news? Write G or B.

1 We’re winning back customers.
2 They’ve made a comeback.
3 It’s eating into our profit.
4 We’re branching out.
5 We’ll have to slim down.
6 They’re in the doldrums.
7 We’ve bucked the trend.
8 Quality has fallen off.

4 Complete the dialogues using one of these phrases in each response.

- **slim down**
- **comeback**
- **catch somebody on the hop**
- **buck the trend**
- **bring sb in**
- **do sth up**
- **in the doldrums**
- **branch out**
- **fall off**

► Will he continue just doing what he’s good at? ~ No, he’s decided to branch out.
1 Did you solve the computer problem yourselves? ~ No,
2 Were you expecting the sudden fall in sales? ~ No,
3 Has the quality stayed the same? ~ No,
4 Is the company doing any better? ~ No,
5 Has the company kept all its workers? ~ No,
6 Have they had the same poor results as others? ~ No,
7 Did you get professional decorators? ~ No,
8 Long hair is out of fashion, isn’t it? ~ No,
I can describe a date

Blind Date

A friend of both Luisa and David decided that they might like each other, so arranged for the two of them to meet and have dinner at a restaurant.

Luisa

Preparation: The dress I'd had in mind was perfect, but at the last minute I noticed it had a mark on it so I rushed around trying to find something else, getting all hot and bothered in the process. I was pretty wound up by the time the taxi called for me!

First impressions: David appeared to have bags of confidence and was good fun. And really handsome – I couldn’t take my eyes off him.

What was the conversation like? Great. The waitress came several times to take our order – we were chatting away quite happily and it was a long time before we got round to looking at the menu.

Will you meet again? We swapped phone numbers. As far as I could tell, he seemed keen!

David

Preparation: This being a blind date. I wanted to make an impression, but I decided to keep it casual.

First impressions: When Luisa arrived at the restaurant she was a bundle of nerves, and she seemed unhappy about something. But she soon snapped out of it and started to enjoy herself.

What was the conversation like? Fine. Luisa was shy at first but gradually came out of her shell and we talked about our friends, travelling, and the like. In fact, the time just flew by.

Will you meet again? I’ve got her number, but I don’t think romance is on the cards.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>phrase</th>
<th>meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>have sth/sb in mind</td>
<td>know the type of thing/person you want for a particular purpose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rush around/round</td>
<td>INF feeling anxious and under pressure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(all) hot and bothered</td>
<td>INF anxious and worried. If you wind sb up INF, you deliberately do or say sth to make them angry or upset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>wound up</td>
<td>INF, you deliberately do or say sth to make them angry or upset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call for sb</td>
<td>meet sb at their home in order to take them somewhere. If you pick sb up, you go in your car to collect sb from their home or another place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bags of sth</td>
<td>INF a lot of sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chat away</td>
<td>talk in a relaxed way.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get round to (doing) sth</td>
<td>find the time to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as far as I can/could tell</td>
<td>used to say that you think sth may be true but there may be facts you do not know.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind date</td>
<td>a meeting between two people who have never met to spend some time together and see if a romantic relationship develops.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make an impression (on sb)</td>
<td>make sb notice and admire you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be a bundle/bag of nerves</td>
<td>be very nervous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>snap out of it</td>
<td>INF stop being unhappy, upset, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come out of your shell</td>
<td>be less shy and more confident with people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and the like</td>
<td>and similar things.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fly by</td>
<td>If a period of time flies by, it passes very quickly. SYN flash by.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be on the cards</td>
<td>INF be likely to happen.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight eye

I couldn’t take my eyes off him. = I found him so attractive that I watched him all the time.
I couldn’t look her in the eye. = I couldn’t look at her directly because I was embarrassed or ashamed.
1 Are these good signs or bad signs on a date? Write G or B.
1. They chatted away. 6. They had bags of fun.
2. She wound him up. 7. The taxi picked her up late.
3. Time just flew by. 8. She left feeling hot and bothered.
4. He couldn’t take his eyes off her. 9. She made an impression on him.
5. She didn’t come out of her shell. 10. Another date isn’t on the cards.

2 Change one wrong letter in each sentence.
I’ve been gushing around all day getting ready for my date tonight. rushing
1. How did your bland date go last night?
2. She seemed to enjoy herself, as far as I could sell.
3. It was fantastic; the time just blew by. It was midnight before we knew it.
4. What exactly do you have in mind for us to do this afternoon?
5. OK, I’ll fall for you at about 5.00, so please be ready to leave.
6. I know you’re upset, but it’s time you slapped out of it and got on with your life.

3 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.
I did Isobel seem happy? ~ Yes, as far as I could tell
1. Did Anna realize you had lied to her? ~ Yes, I couldn’t look her
2. Did the date go well? ~ Yeah, but I was a
3. Did you manage to write that email to Sam? ~ No, I just didn’t get
4. Could you give me a lift to the airport? ~ OK, I’ll
5. She was gorgeous, wasn’t she? ~ Yes, Freddy couldn’t take
6. Was he easy to talk to? ~ Oh, yeah, we

4 Cross out one unnecessary word in each line.
I went on a blind _first_ date last night with a guy called Eric. I don’t know
what I had in the mind, but it certainly wasn’t Eric. I was a bit shocked,
because when he picked me up at the station, he looked a complete mess, and
as far as I could tell him, he was still wearing the clothes he’d been gardening
in and hadn’t got him round to making himself look presentable. But I can
say that he had big bags of personality – a bit too much, in fact, because
by the time we got to the restaurant, he’d managed to get wind me up with his
extreme views on women’s rights, equality, and the same like. I can’t say that
the evening flew by: time seemed to drag interminably, particularly as Eric
chatted himself away while I sat there like a fool. He took me to the station and said he’d
like to meet again. At that point I couldn’t look at him in the eye because for me
another date was not on the playing cards. What a relief to get home!

5 Complete the sentences using words from the box. There are more words than you need.
runs dates do call make wound in pick bundle come
1. Do people often go on blind ___ in your country?
2. If you went on one, would you be relaxed, a bit ___ up or a ___ of nerves?
3. If you go on a first date, what’s the best way to ___ an impression on the person?
4. Are you shy, and if so, what would make you ___ out of your shell?
5. Should the man ___ for the woman at her home, or just meet her somewhere?

6 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions in Exercise 5 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
I can describe a family wedding

Marisa’s wedding POSTED BY Shania on May 18th

When my sister’s boyfriend, Glyn, finally popped the question – and she said ‘yes’ – the family decided that Marisa’s big day would be one she would never forget. Dad said, the sky’s the limit – you’re to have nothing but the best.” Marisa just wanted to get a wedding dress off the peg, but Mum wouldn’t hear of it, and she ended up in a handmade gown which nearly broke the bank.

The ceremony was beautiful and went off without a hitch. Then, at the reception, it was Dad’s big moment – he got up to propose a toast to Marisa and Glyn, and you could see he was speaking from the heart. Unfortunately, though, his emotions got the better of him and we couldn’t shut him up. He went on and on about his beautiful little girl, then talked about Glyn in glowing terms, and ended up by saying how having grandchildren would be the icing on the cake! Poor Marisa had her head in her hands at this point. He finally had to stop when Mum broke down in tears, which was lucky because it was getting rather embarrassing! But actually, I think that speech really made Marisa’s day.

Glossary

- **pop the question** INF ask sb to marry you.
- **the sky’s the limit** INF there is no limit to what sb can spend, achieve, etc.
- **nothing but** only.
- **off the peg** (of clothes) made to a standard size and not made especially for you. (Sth that is off the shelf, e.g. computer software, can be bought immediately and is not designed or made especially for you.)
- **won’t/wouldn’t hear of sth** refuse to accept a suggestion or an offer.
- **break the bank** INF If sth breaks the bank, it costs a great deal of money.
- **go off** (of an organized event) happen in a particular way. (It went off without a hitch = it happened and nothing went wrong.)
- **propose a toast (to sb)** ask people to wish sb happiness and success by raising their glasses and drinking. (You raise your glass to sb.)
- **(speak) from the heart** (speak) in a very sincere way (also from the bottom of your heart).
- **get the better of sb** If your emotions get the better of you, they are too strong to control, and you behave in a way that you do not want to.
- **shut sb up** IMPOLITE make sb stop talking or making a noise.
- **go on and on (about sth)** talk about sth for a long time in a boring way.
- **in glowing terms** in a very positive way. (If you speak in glowing terms about sb, you are singing their praises.)
- **the icing on the cake** an additional thing that makes a good situation even better.
- **break down (in tears)** lose control of your emotions and start crying.

**spotlight Idioms with day**

- It’s Laura’s big day tomorrow. = a very important day (often a wedding day).
- Winning the cup made my day. = made me feel very happy.
- It’s not every day you go to a wedding. = it’s a very unusual or special event.
1 Match the sentence halves.
   1 Then he proposed a toast a was just the icing on the cake.
   2 It’s not every day b and spoke about her in glowing terms.
   3 He went on and on about the food c and he broke down in tears.
   4 He sang her praises d you go to a wedding with 500 guests.
   5 The fact that the sun shone all day e until eventually we shut him up.
   6 He bought his suit off the peg f she was thrilled and said ‘yes’.
   7 His emotions got the better of him g and asked us to raise our glasses.
   8 When he popped the question h so it wouldn’t break the bank.

2 Circle the correct word or phrase.
   1 She’s feeling very nervous because it’s her large | big day tomorrow.
   2 I bought some new software for my computer off the shelf | peg.
   3 If you let your feelings get the best | better of you, you won’t be able to finish the speech.
   4 We had nothing only | but praise for the way the reception was organized.
   5 We can spend whatever we feel like – the sky’s the top | limit!
   6 When Chris popped | popped out the question, did he give her the ring?
   7 They had a rehearsal the day before the wedding, and it went out | off without a hitch.
   8 I offered to help with the decorations, but they wouldn’t | didn’t hear of it.

3 Put the words in order and add one more word.
   for | nothing | we | best | kids | want | the | our we want nothing but the best for our kids.
   1 heart | she | spoke | the | really
   2 day | good | the | really | my | weather
   3 shelf | medicine | get | the | you | can | this
   4 room | on | tidying | on | mum | and | about | my
   5 icing | on | winning | the | was | the
   6 lottery | win | day | it’s | every | you | the
   7 happy | raise | please | glasses | the | to | couple
   8 hitch | off | the | a | ceremony | without

4 Complete the sentences using a word from the left and a word from the right. You may need
to change the form of the words.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>bottom</th>
<th>sky</th>
<th>glow</th>
<th>big</th>
<th>bank</th>
<th>heart</th>
<th>up</th>
<th>of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>hear</td>
<td>break</td>
<td>shut</td>
<td>tears</td>
<td>limit</td>
<td>day</td>
<td>terms</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 I didn’t expect him to get upset, but he just down in . It was lovely.
2 In the speech, she talked about her daughter in , but they wouldn’t stop shouting; I was really annoyed.
3 I tried to them , but they wouldn’t stop shouting; I was really annoyed.
4 It’s a very nice restaurant, but it won’t the . The set menu’s only €12.
5 I offered to help tidy up after the party, but they wouldn’t it.
6 It rained a lot, but nothing was going to spoil Maxine and Gervase’s .
7 I would like to thank you from the of my for all your kindness.
8 After his success at the national games, the is the for this young athlete.

5 ABOUT YOU Think about a member of your family whose wedding you attended. Write your
answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
1 Whose big day was it?
2 Do you know who popped the question, and where?
3 Did anyone propose a toast? If so, who, and to whom?
4 Did they sing someone’s praises? If so, whose?
5 Did anyone break down in tears? If so, who and why?
6 Did the wedding go off without a hitch? If not, what happened?
A School reunions

Gemma ➤ It’s my school reunion, twenty years on … should I go or not?

Lofty ➤ There’s nothing worse than a school reunion for reminding you of bad childhood memories. You’re under no obligation to go, so if you’re in any doubt, don’t go. Personally, I wouldn’t be seen dead at one; it would just bring out the worst in me.

Cass ➤ If you’re nervous about taking the plunge and walking in on your own, why not get in touch with a few old friends and go together? Then there’s safety in numbers.

Lina ➤ I went to one last year and had a whale of a time! It was a great chance for us all to catch up. Go for it! You’ve got nothing to lose.

Glossary

there’s nothing worse / better / more exciting, etc. than … used to emphasize how bad/good/exciting something is.

under an obligation to do sth forced to do sth for legal or moral reasons. OPP under no obligation to do sth.

I wouldn’t be seen dead … INF used to say you wouldn’t do a particular thing or go to a particular place because it would be embarrassing.

bring out the best/worst in sb make sb show their best/worst qualities.

take the plunge INF decide to do sth difficult or important after thinking about it for a long time.

get in touch (with sb) speak or write to sb, especially after a long time.

there’s safety in numbers SAYING being in a group makes you safer or makes you feel more confident.

have a whale of a time INF have a lot of fun.

catch up (with sb or with/on sth) find out about things that have happened.

go for it! EXCLAMATION used to encourage sb to do sth or try very hard.

have (got) nothing to lose If you have nothing to lose, you should try something because even if it fails, it will not make your situation any worse.

1 Complete the sentences.

1 I haven’t spoken to Damien for years; I must try and ........................................ in touch with him.
2 Always walk home with someone else: remember that there’s ........................................ in numbers.
3 It’s a dreadful club – I wouldn’t be seen ........................................ in there.
4 In the end I ........................................ the plunge and asked her out; fortunately she said ‘yes’.
5 After weeks of worrying, I ........................................ to the reunion and had a whale of a .........................................
6 There’s nothing ........................................ than bumping into your old enemy at a school reunion.

2 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

Ten years after I left school, Marco Tomasi got in ........................................ with me and said he ........................................ touch wanted to meet and up on what I’d been doing. I used to ........................................ with him. and something about him always out the worst in me, so I wasn’t ........................................ keen. I knew that I was under obligation to see him again, especially after ........................................ the way he’d behaved. But in the end I decided that I had to lose, and my ........................................ sisters said, ‘Look – what’s the worst that can happen? Go it!’ Thinking that ........................................ is safety in numbers, I invited them along, but they refused. In the end, ........................................ I met him for dinner one evening and to my surprise, we had a of a time.
B Overheard at the reunion

Look who’s here! It’s Gemma – wow, she looks a million dollars!

Look, I know we’re all pushing 40, but that outfit Marilee’s wearing puts years on her.

Don’t look now, but that man over there is an ex-boyfriend of mine. I was glad to see the back of him, I can tell you.

Poor Clara – she used to be a model and now she’s all skin and bones. I guess time just catches up with you!

Look at Marco – he obviously keeps in trim. I wonder if he’s married? Oh, he seems to be with Gemma. Maybe they’re more than just good friends!

Glossary

look who’s here! used when sb arrives and you are surprised.
look a million dollars INF (of a person) look very good or very attractive.
be pushing 40, 50, etc. INF be nearly 40, 50, etc.
put years on sb INF used to say that sth makes sb seem much older than they are. OPP take years off sb.
don’t look now used to tell sb to look at sb else, but not immediately because you do not want that person to know you are discussing them.
be glad to see the back of sb INF be happy when sb leaves because you do not like them.
be (all) skin and bones INF be very thin in an unattractive or unhealthy way.
catch up with sb begin to have an effect on sb. (Compare with page 64.)
keep in trim stay in healthy physical condition. OPP be out of shape.
just (good) friends used to emphasize that two people are not having a romantic relationship.

3 Circle the correct answer.
1. If someone looks a million dollars, they are rich | look great.
2. If your clothes put years on you, they make you look older | younger.
3. If you’re glad to see the back of someone, you enjoy | don’t enjoy their company.
4. If you’re just good friends, you are | aren’t in a romantic relationship with someone.
5. If someone is pushing fifty, they are over | under fifty.
6. If you’re keeping in trim, you’re in good shape | out of shape.
7. If your age is catching up with you, you’re feeling older | younger.
8. If someone is all skin and bones, they look attractive | terrible.

4 Complete the dialogues with a word or phrase.
1. Well, who’s here! It’s Olivia! ~ Wow, she obviously in trim.
2. Don’t look , but Anna’s looking awful. ~ Yeah, she’s all skin and .
3. Don’s overweight and it’s put on him. ~ Yes, he really looks out of .
4. Well, we’re all 50, aren’t we? ~ Yeah, time is catching with us all.
5. Suri’s looking a dollars. ~ I think that hair colour years her.
6. Is Martin going out with Naomi? ~ I don’t think so. She says they’re just good

5 ABOUT YOU Have you been to a school reunion? If so, what was it like? Or would you like to go to one in the future? Why / Why not? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
The decision by the Liverpool manager to leave key players on the bench and gamble on youth didn't pay off at Stamford Bridge yesterday. Chelsea brushed aside a Liverpool team that was way below par, and should have won more easily than the 2-1 score suggests. Lampard and Ballack gave Chelsea a 2-0 lead, and although Liverpool hit back in the second half, they were never really in contention. With Manchester United's game rained off last night, this win means that Chelsea have gained ground on the league leaders, but there is still a long way to go.

on the bench - A player who is on the bench for a match is a substitute.

pay off - take a risk with sb/sth, hoping you will be successful.

brush sb/sth aside - treat sb/sth as unimportant.

hit back - start to perform well against a team that has been in the lead.

in contention (for sth) - having a chance of success; in a position to win sth.

rained off - If an event is rained off, it is postponed because of rain.

gain ground (on sb) - gradually get closer to sb you are competing with.

a long way to go - a lot more to do before you are successful.

The team were below par today. = less good than usual or expected.

We're on a par with Arsenal. = about the same level/standard as Arsenal.

1. Circle the correct answer.
   1. The game was rained out | off last night.
   2. The team is still in | on contention.
   3. We're gaining ground | speed on the leaders.
   4. The team was below | under par today.
   5. He brushed away | aside my comments.
   6. We're on par | a par with the others.

2. Complete the dialogues.
   1. Did they score first? ~ Yes, but we back ten minutes later.
   2. Is he in the starting eleven? ~ No, he's on the .
   3. Do you think you'll win the title? ~ I don't know. There's still a long to go.
   4. Did they play well? ~ No, I thought we were way below .
   5. Are they still playing tonight? ~ No, it's been rained .
   6. Why aren't Coles and Low playing? ~ The manager's gambling the younger players.

3. Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.
   1. We're about the same standard as Everton. PAR
   2. The coach treated the comments as unimportant. BRUSH
   3. We have a chance of winning the title. CONTENTION
   4. He's confident the strategy will work. PAY
   5. We're catching the league leaders. GROUND
   6. Is he going to risk Palmer tonight? GAMBLE
B How the fans saw it

**Chelsea fans**

'I thought we eased off and let them off the hook in the second half.'

'I'm disappointed we didn't go all out for a third goal.'

'A win's a win, and now we're within striking distance of Man United.'

**Liverpool fans**

'We had to dig deep, but we fought back well in the second half.'

'We held our own for half an hour, but we were always going to come off worse with that team.'

'We're out of the running for the league now. I think our manager's lost the plot.'

---

**Glossary**

- let sb off the hook: INF allow sb to get out of a difficult situation.
- go all out for sth: make a big effort to achieve sth.
- within striking distance (of sb/sth): near enough to reach or attack sb/sth or to achieve sth.
- dig deep: use all your effort.
- fight back: work hard to achieve or oppose sth, especially in a situation where you are losing.
- hold your own (against sb): compete equally against sb, especially sb stronger than you, in a competition or difficult situation.
- come off worse: lose a fight, competition, etc., or suffer more compared with others.
- be in / out of the running (for sth): have some/no chance of being successful in sth.
- lose the plot: INF no longer understand a situation or how to deal with it.

---

**Spotlight** ease off

If a player or team eases off, it usually means they try less hard (as above). If something unpleasant or annoying eases off, it becomes less strong, e.g. The rain is easing off. The pain will ease off soon.

---

4 Are you pleased or unhappy with your team? Write P or U.

1. We dug deep. 5. We held our own.
2. We let them off the hook. 6. We fought back.
3. We lost the plot. 7. We came off worse.
4. We're in the running. 8. We're within striking distance.

---

5 Complete the text.

The conditions were terrible at the start of the game and they had a much bigger side, so we (1) off worse in the early exchanges. But the guys (2) deep and once the rain (3) off I felt we pretty much (4) our own. In fact, in the second half, we were the ones going all (5) for the winning goal. Unfortunately it never came, and some people may say we let them off the (6) in the end. But I still thought it was a good performance, and if we win on Saturday we'll be within (7) distance of second place, so we're definitely still in the (8) for the title.
Feedback from the 10th International Memory Conference, York

+- A terrific conference. The time just flashed by and I came away with a wealth of ideas. You can give yourselves a pat on the back!

+- I really enjoyed the weekend. I met some delegates who I didn’t see eye to eye with, but that’s given me plenty of food for thought. Thanks from one very satisfied delegate!

+- I was impressed with the standard of speakers – Jim Rose really opened my eyes with his talk, and he was brilliant at answering questions off the cuff. Plus I got the chance to hear about the latest research, which had been my aim all along.

+- Thank you. You lined up some great speakers. I really appreciated the way they bridged the gap between theory and practice, and managed to cater for all sorts of participants. And the accommodation on the university campus was second to none.

- I was disappointed at the lack of opportunity to bounce ideas off one another. We needed more time to feed our ideas back to the organizers while the conference was still going on.

- A couple of events were swapped but we were not told about it, so I missed out on Jim Rose’s apparently excellent talk. Instead, I sat through a terrible talk in the Great Hall where the speaker really didn’t know his stuff. And we needed wireless facility – it would be worth bearing in mind for next year.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flash by</td>
<td>If time flashes by, it goes very quickly. SYN fly by.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come away with sth</td>
<td>leave a place with new knowledge or ideas or a particular impression.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a pat on the back</td>
<td>INF praise for something you have done well.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>see eye to eye with sb</td>
<td>share the same views as sb about sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>food for thought</td>
<td>an idea that makes you think about sth seriously and carefully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open sb’s eyes (to sth)</td>
<td>make sb realize the truth about sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all along</td>
<td>all the time; from the beginning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>line sb/sth up</td>
<td>arrange for sb to be available for an event or arrange for an event to happen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bridge the gap/gulf/divide (between …)</td>
<td>reduce the differences between two things or groups of people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cater for sb/sth</td>
<td>provide the things that a person or a situation requires.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>second to none</td>
<td>as good as the best; excellent.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bounce ideas off sb</td>
<td>discuss ideas with other people to get their opinion and make a decision.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>feed (sth) back (to sb)</td>
<td>give information or opinions about sth to sb, especially so that it can be improved. feedback N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miss out (on sth)</td>
<td>lose the opportunity to have or to do sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>know your stuff</td>
<td>INF know a lot about a particular subject or job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear sth in mind</td>
<td>remember an important piece of information that could be useful in the future.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

spotlight Idioms with off

He speaks well off the cuff. = without planning it first; spontaneously.
She said a number off the top of her head. = without careful thought or checking the facts.
His talk was a bit off the wall. = INF unusual; slightly crazy.
1 Circle the correct word.
   1 If you’re speaking off the **cuff** | **wall**, you are speaking spontaneously.
   2 If a school is second to none, it is the **best** | **second best**.
   3 If you’ve known something all along, you’ve known it for a while | from the beginning.
   4 If you bear something in mind, you remember some information to use **now** | **later**.
   5 If you say something off the top of your head, you do it **without** | **after** thinking carefully.
   6 If you don’t get the chance to do something you enjoy, you **miss it out** | **miss out on it**.
   7 If something gives you food for thought, you **eat** | **think about it**.
   8 If someone makes you realize the truth about something, they open your **ears** | **eyes** to it.

2 Complete the sentences with a word or phrase that has the opposite meaning of the words in italics.

   - Did she **criticize** you for your talk, or did she give you a **pat on the back**?
   - Was it a fairly **sensible** talk, or was it a bit?
   - Had she **planned** what she was going to say, or did she just speak?
   - Will you just **ignore** what people said, or will you bear?
   - Did they **say nothing** to you after your talk, or did they give you some?
   - Did the time pass **slowly** or did it?
   - Have you found out about it **recently**, or have you known about it?

3 Complete the dialogues.

   1 A Do you get on well with your boss?
      B No, we don’t really see to, unfortunately.
   2 A I was sorry to out on the chance to hear Professor Quentin.
      B Yes, he’s a great speaker, and he really his stuff.
   3 A Do you know who they’ve got up to open the conference?
      B Not yet. But it’s hard to find someone who can for the interests of everyone in the audience.
   4 A How did the discussion go?
      B Fantastic! It was a great opportunity to ideas off each other.
   5 A I thought my talk went OK.
      B It was far better than that – you should give yourself a on the back.
   6 A When I fed to the organizers, I told them I wasn’t happy about the venue.
      B Let’s hope they that in mind for next time.

4 Order the words to make sentences.

1 and | between | the | must | rich | bridge | we | gap | poor
2 the | to | see | l | didn’t | with | eye | eye | teacher
3 important | eyes | my | she | things | more | opened | to
4 new | a | away | lot | with | ideas | came | we | of
5 my | off | an | top | l | answer | head | gave | the | of
6 back | on | a | organizers | pat | the | the | deserve

5 ABOUT YOU Think about the last time you listened to a speaker giving a talk. Circle the correct word, then write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.

   1 Did the time go slowly, or did it flash **back** | **by**?
   2 Did the speaker **tell** | **know** his/her stuff?
   3 Was the talk very conventional, or a bit off the **cuff** | **wall**?
   4 Did the speaker cater for | **with** the whole audience?
   5 Did it give you food for thinking | **thought**?
   6 Did you come **away** | **along** afterwards with any new ideas?
Review: Events

Unit 20

1 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.
   1. Is Milly a good cook? ~ No, she can’t cook to _save her life_.
   2. Goodness, it was a mess. ~ Yes, it looked like a bomb.
   3. Who’s going to carry on after you? ~ Edward said he would take _next week_.
   4. Have you tested it yet? ~ No, but we’re going to try _a tiny bathroom_. ~ I know, there’s no room to swing.
   5. I only made a little mistake. ~ Yes, it was stupid of Don to make a big thing.
   6. Did anyone disapprove? ~ Yes, the managing director raised an _something along_.
   7. Will the new plans be similar? ~ Yes, something along _a big_.
   8. I expect you’re pleased you don’t have to go. ~ Yeah, it’s a weight.

2 Complete the idiom or phrasal verb being defined.
   1. _like INF_ a lot, e.g. _practise like_.
   2. _can’t do sth to INF_ your life INF can’t do sth at all, or only very badly.
   3. _pull sth INF out INF_ succeed in doing sth that is difficult.
   4. _pitch INF with sb/sth INF_ too anxious or tired to be able to relax.
   5. _pitch INF with sb/sth INF_ join in and help other people with an activity.
   6. _a big INF_ serve food onto plates for a meal.
   7. _a big INF_ is something that is very important. If something isn’t important, we say it’s no big.
   8. _tried and INF_ successfully used or relied on in the past.

Unit 21

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.
   1. put up a your doubts about something
   2. come b something behind
   3. set up c a tent
   4. have d the easy way out
   5. leave e camp
   6. make f an eye on something
   7. keep g in handy
   8. take h do with something

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals, in the correct form. Keep the meaning the same.
   ▶ Could you watch my bag for me? _EYE_ Could you keep an eye on my bag for me?
   1. It rained very heavily. TIP
   2. I found the book by chance. STUMBLE
   3. We got very wet. SKIN
   4. We made good use of that tin opener. COME
   5. I got very tired. WEAR
   6. The band were very popular. BOMB
   7. We can manage with two assistants instead of three. MAKE
   8. I’m a bit uncertain about Jeremy. DOUBTS
Unit 22

1 Tick the correct ending.
   1 She was lovely, and I (a) couldn’t look her in the eye.  (b) couldn’t take my eyes off her. ☐
   2 It was a very noisy place, which (a) wasn’t what I had in mind. ☐ (b) wasn’t on the cards. ☐
   3 The date went well, (a) as far as I could tell. ☐ (b) as far as it goes. ☐
   4 I should never have agreed to go with Luis because (a) he just snapped out of it. ☐ (b) he just winds me up. ☐
   5 Mai was a bag of nerves at first, but later she a) came out of her shell. ☐ b) wound me up. ☐
   6 I was so embarrassed when he mentioned his wife that (a) I couldn’t take my eyes off him. ☐
      (b) I couldn’t look him in the eye. ☐
   7 We were going for a meal, and Hari (a) called for me at the station. ☐ (b) picked me up at the station. ☐
   8 It’s been hectic – I’ve been (a) rushing round all day. ☐ (b) getting round to it all day. ☐

2 Complete the conversation about Anna’s evening out.
   tami So Anna, how did your (1) __________ date go last night?
   anna Well, I was a (2) __________ of nerves for days beforehand. But anyway, Andy (3) __________ me up at the station, and we went straight to the restaurant that he’d booked.
   tami So what was he like to look at?
   anna Not bad at all! He was quite attractive and had (4) __________ of confidence too. He talked a lot to start with, but then he was good at asking questions, and I started to come out of my (5) __________. In fact, he was very easy to talk to – we (6) __________ away for hours and the time just (7) __________ by.
   tami So do you think you’ll see him again?
   anna I hope I (8) __________ a good enough impression on him. We swapped mobile numbers and he said he’d ring. Yeah, I reckon a second date is on the (9) __________!

Unit 23

1 Complete the crossword.
   
   
   
   
   
   
   
   
   
   1 Ask someone to marry you. (3,3,7)  
   2 You can spend, achieve, or do anything. (3,4,3,5)  
   3 Ask people to wish someone happiness or success by raising their glasses and drinking. (7,1,5)  
   4 Speak in a very sincere way. (5,4,3,5)  
   5 Cost a great deal of money. (5,3,4)  
   6 (Speak about someone) in a very positive way. (2,7,5)  
   7 Something that makes a good situation even better. (3,5,2,3,4)  
   8 If your emotions you, they are too strong to control. (3,3,6,2)
2 Complete the dialogues with a single word.
1. Did you have the suit specially made? ~ No, I got it off the
2. Did it all go smoothly? ~ Yes, it went off without a
3. Did you offer to help? ~ Yes, but she wouldn’t
4. He went on and on. ~ I know, you just can’t shut him
5. You must have been thrilled to win. ~ Yes, it really made my
6. Did she start crying? ~ Yes, she broke down in
7. Did her uncle say nice things about her? ~ Yes, he was singing her
8. Is it the wedding tomorrow? ~ Yes, it’s the big

Unit 24

1 Complete the paraphrases. You may need more than one word.
1. If someone’s nearly fifty, you could say that they’re fifty.
2. If someone’s extremely thin, you might say that they’re all skin.
3. If someone’s looking wonderful, you might say they look a
4. If an outfit makes someone look older, you might say it puts them.
5. If you’re trying to encourage someone to do something, you might say, ‘Go !’
6. If someone has become too fat, you might say they’re out

2 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.
   ➤ She’s exceedingly thin. BONES She’s all skin and bones.
1. We had a lot of fun. WHALE
2. I must contact Stephanie. TOUCH
3. They can’t force you to do it. OBLIGATION
4. I’ll be happy when he leaves. BACK
5. We’re not in a romantic relationship. GOOD
6. I would never go to that place. DEAD
7. A day on the beach is as good as anything. NOTHING
8. I just want to find out the latest news. CATCH

Unit 25

1 Complete the definitions of these idioms and phrasal verbs with a single word.
1. If you dig deep in a game, you use all your
2. If you hold your own, you compete
3. If you are out of the running, you have chance of being successful.
4. If you brush someone aside, you treat them as
5. If rain eases off, it becomes less
6. If you are on a par with someone, you are at the same
7. If you gamble on someone, you take a with them.
8. If a player is on the bench, he or she is a
2 Complete the sentences on the right with a single word, so that they have the same meaning as the sentences on the left.

1. The game was postponed because of rain. The game was rained
2. We still have a chance of winning. We are still in
3. We’re getting closer. We’re gaining
4. We weren’t very good today. Today we were below
5. We tried a new system but it didn’t work. We tried a new system but it didn’t pay
6. We allowed them to get out of that situation. We let them off the
7. In the second half, we didn’t try as hard. In the second half, we eased
8. He doesn’t know what he’s doing. He’s lost the

Unit 26

1 Complete the conversation.

tony I thought it was a good conference, didn’t you? City Hall was excellent.
sian Yeah, as a venue it’s (1) to none.

2 Complete the idioms being defined. You will find one of the words for each idiom in the box.

wall pat cuff food head stuff bear come✔ eye

come away with sth = leave somewhere with a particular impression or knowledge.
1 something in = remember an important piece of information that
possibly could be useful in the future.
2 a on the = praise for something you have done well.
3 off the = without careful thought or checking the facts.
4 for your = an idea that makes you think seriously and carefully.
5 the = be well informed about a particular subject or job.
6 the = unusual; slightly crazy.
7 see to = share the same views as someone about something.
8 the = without planning it first.
A Scandal

BBC under pressure to sack presenter

Politicians are putting pressure on the BBC to remove chat-show host Bob Aldred, after a story leaked out that he uttered racist remarks following his Saturday show. The comments were made off the record, and colleagues feel they have been blown out of proportion. However, Aldred is a household name, and any comments that could stir up controversy and cast doubt on the integrity of the BBC would be very damaging. Friends hope the incident will quickly blow over, but critics argue that the BBC has been left with no option. ‘This story won’t go away,’ said one MP. ‘The BBC must act now to stamp out any possible accusation of racism, and the sooner the better.’

Glossary

put pressure on sb (to do sth) force or try to persuade sb to do sth; that person is then under pressure.

leak out (of secret information) become known to the public.

off the record used for saying that a remark is not official or intended to be made public. OPP on the record.

blow sth (up) out of (all) proportion make sth seem much worse or more dangerous than it really is.

a household name a name known to everyone; a famous person.

stir sth up try to cause arguments or problems.

cast doubt(s) on sth make people feel less certain about sth.

blow over If a difficult situation blows over, people stop talking about it and soon forget about it.

go away disappear.

stamp sth out get rid of sth that is wrong or dangerous, often with force.

the sooner the better as soon as possible.

1 Circle the correct answer.

1 If you cast doubt on something, you make other people feel more / less certain about it.
2 If a situation blows over, people start / stop worrying about it.
3 If a comment is made on the record, it is / isn’t intended to be made public.
4 If information leaks out, it becomes known / official.
5 If you stamp something out, you put your foot on it / get rid of it.
6 If a problem goes away, it disappears / moves somewhere else.

2 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

We need to get rid of prejudice. STAMP We need to stamp out prejudice.
1 He tried to make her change her mind. PRESSURE
2 His comments weren’t intended to be made public. RECORD
3 We need to do this, and as soon as possible. SOONER
4 He’s known to everyone. HOUSEHOLD
5 The secrets have become known recently. LEAK
6 People will soon forget about the incident. BLOW
7 She made it seem much worse than it was. PROPORTION
8 His comments have caused a lot of anger. STIR
B Opinions about the press

'Newspapers print all sorts of allegations, many of them untrue, but mud sticks, and the unfortunate victims bear the brunt of it.'

'Some newspaper stories may not ring true, but generally journalists go to great lengths to check their facts and ensure their stories are accurate.'

'If it weren't for the press, a lot of things would be swept under the carpet and might never come out into the open.'

'Newspapers sometimes overstep the mark, but they also speak out against social injustice, so I tend to have mixed feelings about them.'

Glossary

bear the brunt of sth suffer the worst part of sth unpleasant.
not ring true If sth doesn’t ring true, you don’t believe it, even though you cannot explain why.
go to great lengths (to do sth) try in a determined way to achieve sth. (If you will go to any lengths (to do sth), you are so determined to achieve sth that you would act in an extreme way if necessary.)
if it weren’t/wasn’t for sb/sth used to say who or what is preventing sth from happening (If it weren’t for the press, ... = Without the press, ...).
sweep sth under the carpet try to keep sth a secret, especially sth you have done wrong. (of sth that was previously secret) become known. SYN come to light.
come out in/into the open upset sb by doing or saying more than you should. SYN go too far.
overstep the mark state your opinions in public, especially in order to protest against or defend sth.
speak out (against sth) feel both positive and negative about sth/sb.

spotlight Sayings about truth

Two contradictory sayings are often used when discussing the press:
Mud sticks. = People remember the bad things they hear about someone, even if they are later shown to be false.
There’s no smoke without fire. = If something bad is said about something, it usually has some truth in it.

3 Same or different? Write S or D.

1 They’ll go to great lengths to find out. They’ll go to any lengths to find out.
2 They’ve gone too far. They’ve overstepped the mark.
3 I have mixed feelings about it. I have bad feelings about it.
4 There’s no smoke without fire. Mud sticks.
5 The facts will come out in the open. The facts will come to light.
6 We know it because of John. If it weren’t for John, we wouldn’t know it.

4 Complete the dialogues.

1 Is the information still secret? ~ No, it’s all out in the now.
2 Are you sure it’s the right thing to do? ~ No, I’ve got feelings, actually.
3 Will you support the protest? ~ Yes, we have to out against the government.
4 Do you believe the story? ~ You know what they say: there’s no smoke.
5 Will the government tell us? ~ No, they’ll sweep it.
6 Do you believe what they’re saying? ~ No, it doesn’t ring.
7 Who has suffered the most criticism? ~ Well, Amelia’s borne the of it.
8 Did he try to find out? ~ Yes, he went to great to discover the truth.

What's in the news? 75
A Robbery

Robbery in broad daylight leaves shop owner stunned

Police are on the lookout for two men who held up a shop in Weston yesterday and stole £2,000. The two were lying in wait for the owner, Rob Hadley, when he returned to the shop shortly after 2 p.m. Mr Hadley was held at gunpoint while the men took money from the till and the flat above the shop. They made off with the money along Ship Street and escaped across the common. Mr Hadley said he was stunned by the attack. A police spokesperson, Ann Tandy, said they were stepping up their campaign to get guns off the streets in the wake of the robbery. 'We will crack down hard on anyone caught in possession of firearms,' said Tandy. 'We need to nip this in the bud.'

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>in broad daylight</td>
<td>at a time of day when it is not dark or beginning to get dark (often used when you are surprised to see sth at this time of day).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be on the lookout for sb/sth</td>
<td>INF be looking carefully for sb/sth in order to find them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hold sb/sth up</td>
<td>use violence to steal from a shop, bank, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lie in wait (for sb)</td>
<td>hide while waiting to surprise, attack, or catch sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at gunpoint</td>
<td>while being threatened with a gun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>make off with sth</td>
<td>steal sth and hurry away with it in order to escape.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step sb/sth up</td>
<td>increase the amount or speed of sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the wake of sth</td>
<td>coming soon after or following sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>crack down (on sth/sb)</td>
<td>INF try harder to prevent an illegal activity and deal severely with those caught doing the activity. crackdown N.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in possession of sth</td>
<td>FML having or owning sth, often sth that is illegal or important.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nip sth in the bud</td>
<td>INF stop a bad situation from becoming worse by taking action at an early stage of its development.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Circle the logical answer(s). Sometimes both answers may be logical.
1 The police were lying in wait for the robbers | their colleagues.
2 We want to nip roller skating | under-age drinking in the bud.
3 They made off with the money | jewels.
4 She was in possession of her clothes | secret information.
5 They're having a crackdown on shopping | gambling.
6 The company want to step up their idea | production.

2 Write in the missing prepositions.
1 lie wait somebody
2 be the lookout somebody
3 broad daylight
4 gunpoint
5 the wake something
6 make off something
7 possession something
8 nip something the bud

3 Complete the text. Then circle the full idioms and phrasal verbs.

Early yesterday morning the police received a tip-off about a robbery at the post office in Denton. They were (1) in wait for the robbers when they arrived on the scene, and caught them as they attempted to (2) off with the money. Both men were charged with robbery and being in (3) of an illegal firearm. One of the police officers said that in the (4) for these two men, and their arrest was a further success in their campaign to (5) down on armed robbery in the area.
Crime stories in the news

Police press charges against MP

Duke vows to clear his name

Government to tighten up gambling laws

Police go on the offensive

Youngsters being led astray

Reporter goes under cover

Plan to phase out complicated police forms

Police tipped off by gang member

Knife crime on the up

Accused athlete in the clear

Politicians must clean up their act say public

Glossary

press charges (against sb) officially accuse sb of committing a crime.
clear sb’s name prove that sb did not do sth that they were accused of.
tighten sth up make a law, rule, or system more strict.
go on the offensive begin to take action against sb who is attacking or criticizing you, or sth you think is undesirable.
lead sb astray be a bad influence on sb and make them do sth silly or criminal.
go/be under cover pretend to be sb else in order to find out secret information.
phase sth out gradually stop using sth over time. Opp phase sth in.
tip sb off give sb a warning or secret information. Tip-off N.
on the up increasing (as above), or improving, e.g. Business is on the up.
in the clear no longer believed to be guilty of sth bad or illegal.
clean up your act INF start behaving in a more moral and responsible way.

4 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1 tip  a your name
2 lead  b on the offensive
3 press  c up your act
4 clear  d somebody off
5 go  e charges
6 clean  f somebody astray

5 Circle the correct answer.

1 If you phase something in, you introduce something immediately / gradually.
2 If somebody is in the clear, they are found innocent / have escaped.
3 If crime is on the up, it is increasing / at its highest point.
4 If you tighten up a law, you change it / make it stricter.
5 If you tip somebody off, you give them money / a warning.
6 If you clean up your act, you behave more responsibly / in a more organized way.

6 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

1 They’re going to gradually discontinue the scheme. PHASE
2 The policeman pretended to be a criminal. COVER
3 He was a bad influence on the boy. ASTRAY
4 She wants to prove that she’s innocent. CLEAR
5 The police have accused him of committing the crime. PRESS
6 They are beginning to take action against him. OFFENSIVE
A news report

An estimated turnout of 50,000 demonstrators from all walks of life joined forces yesterday in the capital for an anti-government rally. The protesters made their way along the river to St John’s Square, calling on the government to bring an end to poverty and injustice. Many local businesses had boarded up their premises amid fears of attack. Despite threats of violence beforehand, however, the march was allowed to go ahead. In the event, it passed off quite peacefully, although a smaller protest by about fifty demonstrators was broken up by the police, and a number of arrests were made.

Glossary

turnout n. the number of people who attend an event. turn out v.
from all walks of life n. A crowd from all walks of life consists of many different types of people (your walk of life is your background, job, etc.).
join/combine forces v. work together to achieve sth.
make your way v. (with adverbial phrase) move or get to a particular place.
call on sb to do sth v. officially ask sb or an organization to do sth.
bring/put an end to sth v. stop sth happening.
board sth up v. cover the windows or door of a building with wooden boards to protect it or stop sb entering.
go ahead v. happen; take place. go-ahead n. (The march was given the go-ahead).
in the event adv. as it actually happened (used especially when things did not happen as expected). pass off v. take place and be completed in a particular way (The protest passed off peacefully / smoothly / without incident). SYN go off.
break sth up v. make a group of people leave a place or stop doing sth.

1 Complete the paraphrase on the right with one or two words.

1. How many were at the march? What was the turnout?
2. Let’s work together on this. Let’s join/combine forces on this.
3. They moved towards the square. They made their way towards the square.
4. The windows were covered in boards. The windows were boarded up.
5. Will the protest still take place? Will the protest still pass off?
6. As it happened, we lost. In the event, we lost.
7. The protest was stopped and we had to leave. The police broke up the protest.
8. They were from many different backgrounds. They were from all walks of life.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1. What do the protesters want? ~ They’re calling on the government to stop imports.
2. Were there any problems at the meeting? ~ No, it was fine; it passed off peacefully.
3. Will the march take place? ~ Oh, yes, they’ve been given the go-ahead.
4. What are the people’s demands? ~ They want the leaders to make an end to the war.
5. Was the turnout as you expected? ~ No. In the event, there were a lot more people.
6. Did you work in isolation? ~ No, we joined with another team, which was great.
7. How did you get to the demonstration? ~ We made it on foot.
8. Did the weather affect the march? ~ Yes, fewer people than we’d hoped.
B The protesters’ views

People need to stand up for what they believe in – and today we did. We definitely got our message across: we can't back down now. We’re pressing ahead with plans for further marches, which could pave the way for a coordinated international campaign.

We organized a sit-in in front of the embassy, but the police broke it up.

The police cordoned off part of the square and ordered us to stay there for reasons of safety. In fact, we were just being fenced in so that the press couldn’t talk to us.

The authorities shut down our website, but we managed to spread the word by phone.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Glossary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>stand up for sb/sth</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>back down (on sth)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>press ahead (with sth)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>pave the way (for sth)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>sit-in</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>cordon sth off</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>fence sb in</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>shut sth down</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight Communicating information**

If you get your message across (to sb), you succeed in communicating with other people. You may need to spread the word, i.e. tell a lot of people about something, or put the word out about sth INF. The opposite is to keep sth to yourself, i.e. keep it secret.

3 Circle the correct answer. Both answers may be possible, but have a different meaning.

1 The demonstrators organized a sit-in | a fence-in to protest about students’ fees.
2 The government is trying to spread | put the word about climate change.
3 This is secret information: please keep it for | to yourself for the time being.
4 I don’t know why the police cordoned off | fenced in that particular area.
5 I don’t think the protesters can back down on | press ahead with this issue.
6 The company was trading illegally, so the police shut it off | down.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

1 They will never admit they were wrong. BACK
2 Don’t tell anyone about it. KEEP
3 We will certainly proceed with our plans. PRESS
4 He always defended his beliefs. STAND
5 Why did they put a barrier round the café? CORDON
6 How will we tell everyone? SPREAD
7 The talks made the reforms possible. PAVE
8 It’s very hard to explain what we mean. MESSAGE
A Forthcoming election

PM under fire

The prime minister has come under fire during this election campaign for being slow to respond to events, but he was quick off the mark this morning. In a speech in Dover, he claimed that the Opposition’s tax policies didn’t add up, and that they were plucking numbers out of the air. Meanwhile, the Opposition were trying to capitalize on the latest bad unemployment figures, which clearly illustrated, in their view, that the only thing which could stop the rot was a change of government. They also talked up the latest opinion-poll figures, which now put them neck and neck with the government. In the final analysis it will just boil down to who the voters choose to believe.

Glossary

come/be under fire  be criticized severely for sth you have done.

quick/slow off the mark  fast/slow in reacting to a situation. (See page 162.)

add up  INF seem reasonable or logical (used mainly in a negative sense, e.g. His story doesn’t add up).

pluck sth out of the air  say a name, number, etc. without giving it any thought.

capitalize on sth  gain a further advantage for yourself from a situation.

stop the rot  stop a bad situation from getting worse.

talk sth up  describe or discuss sth in a way that makes it sound better than it is.

neck and neck  (of two people or groups) level with each other in a race or competition.

in the final analysis  used to state a basic truth after everything has been discussed and considered.

boil down to sth  If a situation or problem boils down to one thing, that thing is the main point in the situation, or the main cause of the problem.

1 Cover the glossary, then complete the definitions.

1 If you are neck and neck with somebody, you are ________ with them.
2 If you capitalize on something, you gain an ________ for yourself.
3 If someone’s ideas don’t add up, they don’t seem ________.
4 If you stop the rot, you stop a ________ situation from continuing.
5 If you are slow off the mark, you are slow in ________ to something.
6 If you come under fire, you are being ________ for something you’ve done.
7 If you pluck a figure out of the air, you say a figure without ________.
8 If you talk something up, you make it sound ________ than it is.

2 Write one word in each space.

The government came under (1) ________ this morning, this time from doctors who feel it has been (2) ________ off the mark in reacting to the recent outbreak of swine flu. One doctor summed up the feelings of many when he said that the government was good at talking (3) ________ its response and making it sound fine, but the truth was somewhat different. ‘The solution for this problem requires time, effort, and money. But in the (4) ________ analysis, it all (5) ________ down to money. The figures given by the government are just (6) ________ out of the air, and it isn’t ready to spend the necessary amount.’
B Political scandal

WAR OF WORDS CONTINUES

Last night, politicians from all sides were still engaging in a war of words over the scandal surrounding MPs’ expenses. Some were claiming the newspaper revelations had been a long overdue wake-up call, and several MPs were quoted as saying it was an opportunity for parliament to put its house in order. However, one senior government figure was not giving an inch. He said journalists had been too quick to jump on the bandwagon, and that MPs who had not broken any rules deserved to be given the benefit of the doubt. But with the press having a field day, this story is likely to run and run, and it doesn’t bode well for parliament’s languishing reputation.

Glossary

a war of words
put your house in order
not give/budge/move an inch
jump/climb on the bandwagon
give sb the benefit of the doubt
have a field day
run and run
bode well/ill for sb/ssth

Spotlight wake-up call

The literal meaning of a wake-up call is an arranged telephone call to wake you up at a particular time. Metaphorically, it is an event that makes you realize there is a problem that must be tackled (as above).

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1. We need to put | settle our own house in order first.
2. Too many people are waiting to climb | jump on the bandwagon.
3. The journalists are making | having a field day with this.
4. I think we should leave | give her the benefit of the doubt.
5. They want him to change his mind but he won’t move | give an inch.
6. The newspapers are still having a war of ideas | words over this issue.
7. After the latest problems, this should be a wake-up call | ring for parliament.
8. This new scandal looks set to run and run | race and race.

4 Complete the sentences. You will find one of the words for each idiom or phrasal verb in the box.

field benefit jump bode set wake-up inch war house

The row about pensions looks set to run and run.

1. We should put our own in before we criticize others.
2. I don’t know if it’s true, but we’ll give him the of the for now.
3. You’re just like a politician: you’ll on the at the first opportunity.
4. Journalists will a day when they get hold of this story.
5. The attack was a for us to take the terrorists seriously.
6. There’s been criticism of the policy, but the prime minister won’t an .
7. We had the usual of in parliament today, mostly about nothing.
8. The opinion poll is disastrous for the government, and doesn’t for their future.
A community in conflict

Fate of Charmy Wood hangs in the balance

Environmental groups are locked in battle with the council over the proposed new bypass through parts of Charmy Wood. Opponents of the scheme believe the town can ill afford to lose an area of natural beauty, and a bypass will just open the floodgates to further development. The council remain adamant that there is a crying need for the bypass to keep traffic out of the town centre, and they say they cannot free up any other land. Council leader Val Moran believes the protesters are out of step with the majority, and says the council will stand firm and press on with the new road. It seems that both sides are poles apart, and it is highly unlikely that the council can meet the protesters halfway.

Glossary

hang in the balance
be locked in battle/dispute, etc.
can ill afford (to do) sth
open the floodgates (to sth)
a crying need for sth
free (sb/sth) up
out of step (with sb)
stand firm
press on (with sth)
be poles apart
meet sb halfway

If sth hangs in the balance, its future is uncertain.
(of two people or groups) be involved in a dispute or argument to which there is no obvious solution. SYN be at loggerheads.
used to say that sb should not do sth because it will cause problems.
If an action or decision opens the floodgates, it allows a lot of things to happen that weren't previously possible.
a great and urgent need for sth.
make sb/sth available for a particular purpose.
having ideas that are different from other people's.
refuse to change your opinion.
continue doing sth in a determined way. SYN press ahead (with sth).
(of two people or groups) be widely separated in interests and ideas.
reach partial agreement with sb, or give sb part of what they want.

1 Cover the glossary and complete the definitions.

1 If you are out of step with others, you have ideas from them.
2 If you are at loggerheads with someone, you are involved in a with them.
3 A crying need for something is an need for something.
4 If you open the floodgates to something, you make it for it to happen.
5 If you press ahead with something, you with it.
6 If you meet someone halfway, you give them .

2 Replace the underlined parts of the text in a way that keeps a similar meaning.

Residents of Denway Lane are currently involved in a battle with Paul Hobbs, head teacher of Denway School. Mr Locke wants to (1) make available a large part of the playing fields for development in order to fund a new laboratory. Residents say schools (2) cannot afford to give up valuable green space in a built-up area, and (3) are refusing to change their opinions, despite pressure from Mr Locke, who has vowed to (4) continue with his plans. With the two sides (5) having such different views, it is hard to see how they can (6) find a compromise. The future of the playing fields may (7) be uncertain for some time.

► are locked in

1 4
2
3
7
5
6
B  War metaphors

Some phrases with military origins are used figuratively to talk about conflict situations.

The government has been engaged in a running battle over the introduction of identity cards, and now ministers are threatening to break ranks and side with the Opposition.

Council leader Bryn Jones will be directly in the firing line now the council has finally decided to bite the bullet and raise car parking charges in the town by as much as 15 per cent.

The Union is sticking to its guns in demanding a 7 per cent pay rise, but in the current economic climate it could be fighting a losing battle.

Having a foot in both camps has not helped my supervisor: he has recently been attacked by both shop-floor workers and senior management.

Glossary

a running battle an argument that continues over a long period of time.
(of a member or members of a group) stop supporting the group of which you are a member. (If you close ranks, you join together closely to defend yourselves, especially when being criticized by others.)

side with sb agree with sb and support them in an argument.
be in a position where people can criticize or blame you.

be in the firing line

INF force yourself to do sth difficult or unpleasant that you have been avoiding.

bite the bullet

INF continue to have a particular opinion about sth even though others are saying that you are wrong.

extricate yourself

stick to your guns

fight a losing battle

have/keep a foot

in both camps

be involved with two different or opposing groups.

spotlight Literal meanings

In the past, soldiers were given a bullet to bite on during a medical operation without an anaesthetic; from this we get bite the bullet. When soldiers close ranks, they move closer together to defend themselves. A soldier or gunner is required to keep in position – stick to his guns – and not surrender.

3 Cover the glossary. Then complete the idioms with words associated with war.

1 a running
2 bite the
3 stick to your
4 have a foot
5 fight a losing
6 be in the firing

4 Rewrite the sentences using a suitable idiom or phrasal verb, without changing the meaning.

1 One councillor won't support his own party. One councillor has
   He’s got a
2 He’s involved with both parties. They’ve had a
3 They’ve had an argument over this for ages. He’ll
4 He’ll make the tough decision and raise taxes. The minister is
   She’s
5 The minister is supporting the Opposition. He’s fighting
6 She’s not going to change her mind on this. The minister is in
A  Instant fame

Britain’s got talent – but should it remain hidden?

Large TV audiences prove that talent shows are compulsive viewing. Who will rise to the occasion? Who will go to pieces? But whilst these shows are an opportunity for instant fame, it can come at a price. When people are plucked from obscurity and acquire fame beyond their wildest dreams, it can go to their head. Many of these ‘instant stars’ quickly fall by the wayside, and the public can be very fickle: building somebody up one minute, then knocking them down the next. Perhaps we should tread more carefully rather than allow a single audience reaction to make or break a young performer.

Glossary

rise to the occasion  do well in a difficult situation.
go to pieces  become so upset or nervous that you cannot do sth as well as you should.
at a price  involving an unpleasant consequence (come at a price).
beyond your wildest dreams  better than anything you could have imagined.
go to sb’s head  If success or praise goes to sb’s head, it makes them feel more important than they really are, and they usually suffer as a result.
fall by the wayside  not be successful or effective any longer.
tread carefully  be very careful about what you do or say.
make or break sb/sth  be the thing which makes sb/sth either a great success or a complete failure. (Also as adj a make-or-break situation.)

spotlight build up

If you build sb up, you talk about them in a positive way so that people are impressed by them. If you then knock sb down, you are negative about them. If you build up sb’s hopes, you make them think something good is going to happen when in fact it is very unlikely.

1 Is the speaker sounding positive or negative about Mel? Write P or N.
   1 Success went to Mel’s head.  4 Mel rose to the occasion.
   2 Mel went to pieces.  5 Mel’s fallen by the wayside.
   3 This is beyond Mel’s wildest dreams.  6 They built up Mel’s hopes.

2 Complete the sentences.
   1 This could be a make-or- performance for Jessica.
   2 Winning the competition was beyond my dreams.
   3 It’s a big challenge for Connie, but I’m sure she’ll to the occasion.
   4 Ravi was too young to cope with fame, and the money went to his .
   5 As soon as I got up on stage I just went to and couldn’t sing. It was horrible.
   6 The press built him up, and then him down; that happens so often.

3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.
   1 A lot of actors fail and give up. WAYSIDE
   2 We must be very careful what we say. TREAD
   3 He was successful but it wasn’t all pleasant. PRICE
   4 It was better than anything I could’ve imagined. DREAMS
   5 Holly was too nervous and she performed badly. PIECES
   6 I’m sure Jason will perform very well on the night. RISE
B In the public eye

Jodie separation shock

Jodie Webb faced the press last night after news got out that her four-year marriage to actor Des Miles had reached the end of the line. In an emotional statement, Jodie said they had done their utmost to keep the marriage alive, but being in the public eye coupled with long periods of separation had taken its toll. Despite the news, her agent predicted that Jodie would bounce back from this current setback, and was determined it shouldn't cast a shadow over the release of her latest film. Jodie made a plea for fans to leave her in peace, before fighting her way through the crowd and into the back of a waiting car.

Glossary

get out
(reach) the end of the line/road
do/try your utmost
in the public eye
couple sth with sth
take its toll (on sb/sth) / take a heavy toll (on sb/sth)
bounce back (from sth)
setback

cast a shadow (over sth)
fight your way (through/past sb/sth)

(of secrets or information) become known to the public. SYN leak out.
(reach) the point at which sth can no longer continue in the same way.
try as hard as you possibly can.
well known to many people through the media.
(usually passive) combine sth with sth (coupled with sth = combined with sth).
have a bad effect on sb/sth; cause damage, suffering, etc.
become confident, healthy, or successful again after having problems.
a difficulty or disappointment that prevents progress or makes a situation worse. set sb back V.
make sb feel less happy or hopeful about sth.
move with difficulty through a crowd of people or through/past an obstacle.

4 Tick the correct answer(s). One, two, or three may be correct.

1 He always makes □ does □ his utmost to help.
tries □ 2 The injury has cast a □ over her future.
shadow □ shade □ spell □
3 She fought her way □ through □ the crowd.
along □ past □ through □
its toll □ a heavy toll □ a long toll
4 The accident has taken □ on him.
4 This disappointment has really settled □ driven □ set □ her back.
5 This disappointment has really settled □ driven □ set □ her back.
6 I think they’ve reached the end of the line □ road □ path □.

5 One word is missing in each line of the text. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

Although actress Corinne Black had tried her □ to keep it secret, the news out last night that she was being treated for a form of skin cancer.
As she struggled to fight her through the crowds at a charity gala,
she admitted to waiting reporters that being in the public had made life difficult for her recently, and coupled the birth of her second child only eleven months ago, the illness had her back quite considerably, and taken a heavy on her. Despite this, she said she was determined to back as soon as possible, and her condition would certainly not a shadow over her son's first birthday next month.
A Disaster headlines

HURRICANE RIPS THROUGH WESTERN FLORIDA

Thousands evacuated as fire takes hold in Alicante province

HOUSES SWEPT AWAY BY FLOOD WATERS

Climate change wreaks havoc on coral reefs worldwide

Survivors caught up in north Indian floods come to terms with loss of homes

ETHIOPIA IN THE GRIP OF SEVERE DROUGHT

Coal mine caves in following flood, but no lives lost

BUSH FIRES IN SOUTHERN AUSTRALIA WIPES OUT WHOLE TOWNS

Glossary

rip through sth move forcefully and rapidly through sth.
take (a) hold become very strong and difficult to remove or stop.
sweep sth away (often passive) (of floods, a tornado, etc.) completely destroy sth.
wreak havoc (on sth) cause a lot of damage, destruction, or confusion.
be/get caught up in sth become involved in sth undesirable.
come to terms with sth gradually accept a difficult or unpleasant situation.
in the grip of sth experiencing sth unpleasant that cannot be stopped.
cave in (on sb/sth) (of a roof, wall, etc.) collapse and fall.
lose your life be killed. loss of life N.
wipe sth/sb out (often passive) destroy or get rid of sth/sb completely.

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Cross it out and write the correct word at the end.

My grandfather lost the life during the great storm of 1987. his
1 It's hard to get to terms with the loss of whole communities.
2 A South American civilization was wiped off by earthquakes 3,800 years ago.
3 The tornado is wreaking damage on all parts of the region.
4 The roof caved down, and the people below were lucky to survive.
5 Many tourists have been caught up on the forest fires in California.
6 As the fire started to make hold, people ran to escape the flames.

2 Complete the text with an idiom or phrasal verb from the box in the correct form.

caught up come to terms ✓ sweep sth away wreak havoc
rip through cave in loss of life in the grip

Texans are counting the cost and beginning to come to terms with the devastation caused by the worst winter for twenty years.
Fierce winds have on a line of small towns in their path. Local resident Clint Vaughn by rising floodwater. 'It came so fast, we barely had time in the destruction; I stood with my mouth . It was terrifying,' Vaughn said.
bad weather: the state of Texas is (1) central Texas this week, and several tornadoes have (2) (3) saw his home (4) to get out; we almost got (5) open as the roof of the house just (6) 'Astonishingly, there has been no (7) hospitals are full to overflowing.'
The heavy and unexpected snowfall in recent days has had serious consequences.

Motorists heading for the city centre on the A36 were caught unawares as traffic came to a standstill. Trapped in their cars for hours, they were finally rescued and towed away.

Supplies of salt and grit for the roads are running low, which may put lives at risk.

Some rural areas have been completely snowed in and villages temporarily cut off.

Children have been turned away from schools due to teacher shortages, and workplaces have been closed for the foreseeable future.

Snow is still falling thick and fast, so the Met Office is advising people to stay at home.

---

**Glossary**

- **head for sth**: move towards a place. SYN make for sth.
- **catch sb unawares**: happen in a way that sb was not expecting and was not prepared for.
- **come to a standstill/halt**: slowly stop completely. SYN grind to a standstill/halt.
- **tow sb/sth away**: (of a driver or car) pull another car using a rope or chain.
- **run low**: If your supply of sth is running low or you are running low on sth, you only have a little left.
- **at risk (of/from sth)**: in danger of sth unpleasant or harmful happening (put lives at risk).
- **be snowed in**: be unable to leave a place because of heavy snow.
- **be cut off**: be unable to leave a place or receive visitors or services from outside.
- **turn sb away**: refuse to allow sb to enter a place.
- **for the foreseeable future**: for the period of time when you can predict what is going to happen, based on present circumstances.
- **thick and fast**: happening very quickly and in large amounts or numbers.

---

**3 Write in the missing preposition or adverb.**

1. We were turned from the factory.
2. They were snowed for days.
3. The cottage was cut .
4. Make the nearest exit quickly.
5. Luckily, no lives were put risk.
6. Traffic ground a standstill.
7. The cars were towed .
8. It will last the foreseeable future.

---

**4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.**

- The snow is falling heavily. FAST The snow is falling thick and fast.
- The train gradually stopped. STANDSTILL
- We couldn't contact anyone. CUT
- They removed the car and took it to the police station. TOW
- I went towards the hospital. HEAD
- They refused to let us in the building. TURN
- There is hardly any food left. LOW
- We'll be cut off for some time. FORESEEABLE
- I didn't expect so much snow. UNAWARES
### Review: What’s in the news?

**Unit 27**

1. Put the dominoes in the correct order to make a joined sequence of idioms. Write the correct order of dominoes below.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ring true</th>
<th>A household</th>
<th>name.</th>
<th>Under</th>
<th>pressure.</th>
<th>Off the</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 the mark</td>
<td>Go to great</td>
<td>7 record</td>
<td>Blow sth up out of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 ring true</td>
<td>A household</td>
<td>8 doubt on sth</td>
<td>The sooner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 pressure.</td>
<td>Off the</td>
<td>9 lengths</td>
<td>Sweep sth</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 the better</td>
<td>Bear</td>
<td>10 to light</td>
<td>It doesn’t</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 all proportion</td>
<td>Cast</td>
<td>11 the brunt of sth</td>
<td>Overstep</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 under the carpet</td>
<td>Come</td>
<td>12 name.</td>
<td>Under</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Complete these opinions about stories in the press.

   1. ‘I think the protesters are just up trouble; things are perfectly all right as they are.’
   2. ‘This is a huge scandal for the government, and it won’t just blow if the Prime Minister takes no action. He’s hoping it will all away, but it won’t.’
   3. ‘Every day new information leaks , and if it for the press, we wouldn’t know any of it. It’s a disgrace.’
   4. ‘We’ve known for years that things were bad, but now everything is out in the even more shocking than expected. The politicians have really the mark.’
   5. ‘It’s time we put on our leaders to reform the laws on privacy, and the better as far as I’m concerned.’
   6. ‘I used to have mixed about the government, but now I’m sure they’ve been covering things up. I voted for them because I thought they would out corruption, but we now see that quite the reverse has happened. I’m very shocked.’

**Unit 28**

1. A word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

   ▶ Police are up the search for the missing teenager. **stepping**
   1. The thief was arrested in of a considerable amount of jewellery.
   2. Certain companies need to clean up act with regard to tax evasion.
   3. When journalists go cover, they can put themselves in considerable danger.
   4. The gang were just in wait for Richards; he didn’t stand a chance.
   5. The opposition party is going the offensive over European legislation.
   6. Police in Leeds are the lookout for a gang of bicycle thieves.
   7. The manager was held up gunpoint and forced to hand over the cash.
   8. An enquiry has been ordered in of the explosion at the power plant.
2 Complete the dialogues. You will find one of the words for each idiom or phrasal verb in the box.

- crack
- up
- name
- tip
- clear
- astray
- bud
- daylight

Did he prove he was innocent? ~ Yes, he was able to **clear his name**.
1 Who gave the police the information? ~ They were **called in** by a shopkeeper.
2 The older boys are a bad influence on Sam. ~ Yes, they’re **budding** him.
3 Was the burglary at night? ~ No, it was **clear daylight**, but no one saw anything.
4 The police won’t press charges. ~ That’s right. He’s completely **cracked up**.
5 Is the crime rate rising? ~ Yes, it’s **on the tip**.
6 They should stop it before it gets worse. ~ Yes, they should **clear off** it.
7 We need to deal with burglary more severely. ~ Yes, we need to **call off** on it.

**Unit 29**

1 Using the verbs in the box in the correct form, complete the texts about an anti-war demonstration seen from different perspectives.

- turn out
- pave
- stand up
- bring
- pass off
- spread
- cordon off
- call on
- board up
- make
- break up

DEMONSTRATOR The demonstration was an opportunity for us to (1) **stand up** for what we believe in and (2) **spread** the word to as many people as possible. We hope this will (3) **make** the way for further demonstrations in the future.

POLICE The protesters (4) **turned out** their way along Prince Street, but we (5) **paved** part of Parliament Square for security reasons.

ANTI-WAR POLITICIAN The protesters were exercising their democratic right to protest by (6) **making** the government to (7) **call off** an end to this pointless war.

PRO-WAR POLITICIAN The protesters claimed there would be massive support for this demonstration, but fewer than 5,000 (8) **turned out** , so it was both a failure and a huge waste of police resources.

ONLOOKER The police had to (9) **break up** one or two fights between pro- and anti-war demonstrators, but in general it seemed to (10) **break up** quite peacefully.

SHOPKEEPER If they want to demonstrate, why don’t they go to a public park? I lost money because I had to close my shop and (11) **board up** the windows.

**Unit 30**

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- They’re talking **up** the latest opinion-poll results, but in fact they’re terrible.
1 The truth about politics is that it all boils to a matter of trust.
2 I’m prepared to give them the of the doubt – but it’s the last time.
3 I thought they would compromise, but they wouldn’t an inch.
4 In the analysis, we have no choice but to vote against the government.
5 It’s high time the party put its own in order.
6 The minister just the figures out of the air; it was obviously nonsense.
7 I wanted to believe her, but her story just didn’t up.
8 We definitely need to capitalize this success while we can.
2 Complete the sentences, using idioms from the table in the correct form. You can move horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COME</th>
<th>UNDER</th>
<th>QUICK</th>
<th>MARK</th>
<th>HAVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>FIRE</td>
<td>OFF</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WAR</td>
<td>OF</td>
<td>WORDS</td>
<td>DAY</td>
<td>FIELD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NECK</td>
<td>AND</td>
<td>CLIMB</td>
<td>ON</td>
<td>THE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STOP</td>
<td>NECK</td>
<td>WELL</td>
<td>BODE</td>
<td>BANDWAGON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>THE</td>
<td>ROT</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>WAKE-UP</td>
<td>CALL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The results of the opinion polls don’t bode well for the government.

1 The press have heard rumours about illegal activities in the Independent Party; they will with that.

2 The results of these local elections should act as for the government.

3 The results were incredibly close; the two candidates are running .

4 Car manufacturers will in the press today for continuing to ignore government calls for better safety.

5 Tensions have been heightened between the two countries because of over territorial disputes.

6 To regain its global status, the city must try to which has set in over the last few years.

7 The candidate saw that voters were increasingly interested in green issues, and as a result, we saw him . It’s deeply cynical of him.

8 The government has been surprisingly in introducing new climate change legislation.

Unit 31

1 Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.

1 We can ill afford to do nothing. Our best solution would be to do nothing.

2 Shall we meet them halfway? Shall we accept some of their demands?

3 I’m sure they’ll close ranks on this. I’m sure they won’t support their party on this.

4 I think they’ll bite the bullet. I think they’ll break ranks.

5 We need to stand firm on this. We need to stick to our guns on this.

6 Our future hangs in the balance. Our future is looking more secure.

7 They’re at loggerheads over this. They’re locked in dispute over this.

8 We’re in the firing line. We’re fighting a losing battle.

2 Circle the correct word.

1 If the law is passed, it will release | open the floodgates for thousands of people to request compensation.

2 They’ve been locked in battle for months, and they’re still poles apart | away.

3 On this issue, the government is out of pass | step with the voters.

4 There is a running | crying need for improvement in train services.

5 If we can get extra staff, it will free us up | out to concentrate on the key problems.

6 I didn’t expect him to side | keep with the director. I feel very let down.

7 We have no choice but to press ahead | over with the scheme, despite the protests.

8 He’s trying to keep a foot in both camps | sides, but it won’t work.
Unit 32

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a word. What is it?

1 Most people don’t realize that fame comes at a : a complete lack of privacy.
2 One TV appearance alone has the power to make or a new performer.
3 The press is happy to young people up, but just as happy to knock them down.
4 When people are fragile, we need to carefully and handle them sensitively.
5 The group are remarkably resilient, and after this setback I’m sure they will back.
6 Let’s hope that she overcomes her nerves and can to the occasion on Saturday.
7 Anyone who is in the eye will tell you that it’s not all fun and games.
8 The scandal described in the magazine will a shadow over his career.
9 Winning the competition would be my wildest dreams.
   The word in the grey squares is .

2 There is one word too many in each line. Cross it out.
   ▶ As the money disappeared, all their promises fell down by the wayside.
   1 Having so many children has taken its heavy toll on her health. She’s exhausted.
   2 Smoking is coupled with obesity greatly increases heart problems.
   3 Winning the competition has clearly gone up to her head. She’s unbearable.
   4 We had to fight for our way past the hundreds of people outside the theatre.
   5 I can’t promise anything, but I will certainly try to my utmost to do it by tonight.
   6 My sister went to the pieces when I told her the cat had died. She really loved it.

Unit 33

1 Complete the idiom or phrasal verb in each sentence.

1 The train slowed down and eventually ground to a .
2 Another earthquake will put more lives at .
3 The road will remain closed for the foreseeable .
4 The hurricane will wreak when it hits the coast.
5 Once the forest fires take a , they are almost impossible to stop.
6 The people are still coming to with the loss of their homes.

2 Read the text, then replace the underlined phrases with idioms and phrasal verbs.

▶ coming to terms with

1
2
3
4
5
6
7

People are still accepting the idea of the heaviest snowfall in the United Kingdom for many years. Thousands of motorists driving home yesterday afternoon were (1) very surprised to find themselves in difficulty as the snow fell (2) quickly and heavily, and traffic on several motorways (3) stopped completely. Many cars had to be (4) pulled away by trucks, and the emergency services have warned that conditions could get worse. In the countryside, many people were (5) unable to leave their homes because of the snow this morning and couldn’t get to work, and in parts of Wales, whole villages are (6) isolated by the snow. The meteorological office say we are now (7) experiencing the coldest winter on record.
34 I can talk about communicators

A Good communicators

Good communicators are people who:

- are first of all good listeners, and really **take in** what others have to say.
- make sure their body language **isn’t at odds with** what they are saying.
- **pick up on** little things that are important to people, such as important names or dates.
- **keep** people **in the picture** about things.
- know when to distribute information **on a need-to-know basis**.
- don’t **get** people’s **backs up** by being rude, aggressive, dismissive, etc.
- **win** people **over** rather than make demands.
- are prepared to **open up to** people, so that others will open up to them.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take sth in</td>
<td>understand, absorb, and remember new facts and information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be at odds with sth</td>
<td>be in conflict with sth; contradict sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pick up on sth</td>
<td>notice sth and perhaps react to it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on a need-to-know basis</td>
<td>so that sb is told only what they need to know and only when they need to know it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get sb’s back up</td>
<td>INF annoy sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>win sb over/round (to sth)</td>
<td>get sb’s support or approval by persuading them you are right or sth is right.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>open up (to sb)</td>
<td>talk about what you really feel and think.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight** Giving people information

If you **put sb in the picture**, you give them the information they need to understand a situation. If you **keep sb in the picture**, you continue to give them the necessary information. SYN **keep sb posted** (about/on sth). If you **get the picture**, you understand a situation that somebody is describing to you.

1 Cover the glossary, then answer the questions.

1. If someone puts you in the picture, what do they do?
2. Are you pleased if someone keeps you posted?
3. If someone gets your back up, how do you feel?
4. If you win someone over, what does that involve?
5. If you say to someone that you get the picture, what does it tell them?
6. If you’ve picked up on something, what have you done?
7. If you open up to someone, what do you do?
8. If what someone says is at odds with what they do, are you pleased?

2 Complete the final word in each dialogue.

1. Did you understand everything? ~ No, I couldn’t take it all
2. Do you want to know what’s happening? ~ Yes, could you keep me ?
3. Do you find him annoying as well? ~ Yes, he really gets my back
4. Do you have all the details? ~ No, but Jane will put me in the
5. Do you give them much information? ~ Only on a need-to-know
6. They will need persuading. ~ Don’t worry. Pete will soon win them

3 ABOUT YOU What are the three most important points at the top of the page? Which are you good at or bad at? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B A poor communicator

**HOLLY** Do you think Jonathan will use our ideas in the advertising campaign?

**JAKE** I think he's *mulling* them *over*, but *reading between the lines* I'd say 'maybe'.

**HOLLY** He doesn't *give* much *away*, does he?

**JAKE** No. He doesn't *let* anyone *in on* what he's thinking. He prefers to *keep things to himself*, which is probably why we end up *getting the wrong end of the stick* so often.

**HOLLY** Doesn't it *occur* to him that it's very frustrating to *be kept in the dark* like this?

**JAKE** No. *It makes no odds* to him what people think. Or if he does care, he doesn't *let on*.

---

**Glossary**

- **mull sth over** spend time thinking carefully about a plan or proposal.
- **read between the lines** look for or discover a meaning that is suggested rather than actually stated.
- **give sth/sb away** make known sth that sb wants to keep secret.
- **let sb in on sth** INF allow sb to share a secret, or know what only a few people know.
- **get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick** INF understand sth in the wrong way.
- **occur to sb** (of an idea or a thought) come into sb's mind.
- **it makes no odds** INF used to say that sth makes no difference or is not important.
- **let on (to sb about sth)** INF tell sb sth, especially sth you have been keeping secret.

---

**Spotlight Keeping information back**

If you *keep sth to yourself*, you don’t tell others about it. If you *play/hold/keep your cards close to your chest*, you keep your plans or ideas secret. If you *keep sb in the dark*, you don’t tell them something because you want to keep it secret from them.

---

4 Do you know? Write ‘yes’, or ‘perhaps’, or ‘no’.

1. He plays his cards close to his chest. 
2. He gave it away. 
3. I’m reading between the lines. 
4. He let on. 

5. It didn’t occur to him to tell me. 
6. He let me in on it. 
7. He kept me in the dark. 
8. I got the wrong end of the stick.

---

5 Rewrite the sentences starting with the words given.

- I haven’t told people about the project. *I’ve kept the project to myself.*
- I don’t tell other people my ideas. *I keep my cards.*
- I completely misunderstood what he meant. *I got.*
- It should’ve stayed a secret but I told someone. *I gave.*
- I wanted to think about it. *I wanted to mull.*
- I didn’t tell her because I didn’t want her to know. *I kept.*
- He didn’t tell me exactly but I knew what he meant. *I read.*
- I don’t realize that I’m being secretive. *It doesn’t.*
- I don’t care what people think. *It makes.*
A  Winning the argument

In a heated discussion, how annoyed are you by people who:  very/quite/not at all

• want to win the argument at all costs?

• play devil’s advocate all the time?

• constantly butt in when you’re trying to speak?

• beat about the bush all the time instead of getting to the point?

• always seem to miss the point of what people are saying?

• always want to have the last word?

• just want to argue for the sake of it?

• refuse to back down and admit they are wrong?

Glossary

at all costs used to say that something must be done, however difficult it is. SYN at any cost/price.
play devil’s advocate pretend to disagree with sb in order to start an argument or discussion.
butt in interrupt sb.
beat about the bush discuss sth in an indirect way, without saying what you really want to say.
get to the point stop talking about unimportant details and say what is most important.
miss the point not understand the main thing that sb is trying to say.
have the last/final word (on sth) win an argument by making the last statement or final decision on sth.
for the sake of it If you do sth for the sake of it, you do it because you enjoy it, not because you want to achieve anything else.
back down (on sth) admit that you are wrong or have lost an argument.

1  Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1 She always has the final word.  She always butts in.  S
2 He wants to win at all costs. He wants to win at any price.  S
3 She never gets to the point. She always misses the point.  S
4 He keeps butting in when I’m talking. He keeps interrupting when I’m talking.  D
5 He loves to play devil’s advocate. He often argues for the sake of it.  S
6 She doesn’t beat about the bush. She never backs down.  S

2  Complete the sentences.

1 I never get a chance to finish what I’m saying, because he keeps in.
2 Mr Ellis explained it carefully, but Anya still completely the point.
3 Stop of what you’re trying to say.
4 However much you argue with her, she always has to have the final down.
5 Even if you prove he’s wrong, he still won’t advocate because she enjoys
6 I don’t think she disagreed with you. She was just playing arguing for the of it.

3  ABOUT YOU  Write your answers in the questionnaire at the top of the page, or talk to another student. Do you do any of these things?
B Discussion topics

Do you believe in life after death?

Are exams a necessary evil?

In life, we get what we deserve. Discuss.

Does the end ever justify the means?

We all have to play a part in the fight against crime. Do you agree?

Giving women equal pay may be politically correct, but is it going too far?

Why do some teenagers go off the rails, while others don’t?

We still haven’t got to grips with traffic congestion and pollution. Why not?

Is it true that you can’t teach an old dog new tricks?

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>life after death</td>
<td>a state of existence that some people believe continues after death.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a necessary evil</td>
<td>an unwelcome thing that we have to accept.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you get what you deserve</td>
<td>used to say you think sb has earned the bad things that happen to them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the end justifies the means</td>
<td>SAYING bad or unfair methods of doing sth are acceptable if the result of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the action is good or positive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>play a part in sth</td>
<td>be actively involved in sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>politically correct</td>
<td>(abbreviated to PC) used to describe carefully chosen language or behaviour that won’t upset or offend anybody.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go too far</td>
<td>say or do sth which is considered too extreme.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>go off the rails</td>
<td>INF start behaving in an unacceptable way that shocks or upsets people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>get to grips with sth</td>
<td>start to deal with a difficult task, problem, or situation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>you can’t teach an old dog</td>
<td>SAYING you can’t make people change their methods and ideas when they have used or held them for a long time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>new tricks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Complete the text.

We have CCTV (closed circuit television) everywhere these days. Has it (1) too far? I believe the increase in the number of cameras is simply a symptom of the dangerous society we live in. If cameras help to reduce crime, then as far as I’m concerned, we have to get to (2) with the idea and accept that the end (3) the means. Basically, we get what we (4) I know that’s not the (5) correct view, as CCTV is seen as an infringement of our personal liberty, but we all have to play a (6) in reducing crime, and if CCTV helps us to do that, then it’s a necessary (7).

5 Respond to each situation with a suitable idiom.

▶ It seems an extreme solution. ~ Yes, but the end justifies the means.
1. Can he change his ways after all this time? ~ No, you.
2. Is it right for us to suffer for these mistakes? ~ Yes, we.
3. I don’t like prisons, but we can’t do without them. ~ Yes, they’re.
4. Do people live on after they die? ~ No, I don’t believe in.
5. Their response was excessive. ~ Yes, they’ve.
6. We’re not supposed to say, ‘she’s only a housewife.’ ~ No, it’s not.
7. Traffic congestion is a really urgent problem. ~ Yes, we’ll have to.
8. His son’s started missing school and hanging around in a gang. ~ Yes, he’s really.

6 ABOUT YOU What’s your opinion on the discussion topics at the top of the page? And CCTV? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
A Advice on giving a presentation

› You owe it to your audience to prepare thoroughly, so don’t just **wing it**.

› Decide on just two or three main messages that you want them to **come away with**.

› **Draw on** your own experience: this will give the talk greater credibility.

› If you’re worried about anything in the talk, **run it by** someone you know first.

› Arrive with plenty of **time to spare** and make sure all the equipment is **set up** and in good working order. This will help to **put your mind at rest** before you start.

› Start with something to **make** people **sit up and take notice**: laughter often helps to **loosen up** an audience. They want the talk to succeed, and they will be **rooting for** you.

---

**Glossary**

**wing it**

**come away with sth**

**draw on sth**

**run sth by sb**

**time/money/room, etc. to spare**

**set sth up**

**put sb’s mind at rest/ease**

**make sb sit up (and take notice)**

**loosen sb up**

**root for sb**

---

1 **Tick the words in italics which are possible. One, two, or three may be correct.**

   1. I don’t have a great deal of **help** **time** **money** to spare.
   2. Did you come away from the talk with **any ideas** **thoughts** **advice**?
   3. It would be wise to run your **speech** **idea** **plan** by your boss first.
   4. Could you help me set up this **PC** **car** **armchair**?
   5. This time I had to draw on my **savings** **experience** **friends**.
   6. If you talk to your sister, it’ll put her mind at **ease** **safety** **rest**.

2 **Complete the questions.**

   1. If you had to give a speech, would you prepare thoroughly, or just try to **wing it**?
   2. Would you start with something that would make the audience **sit up and take notice**
      or begin in a more low-key way?
   3. Is it advisable to **run your speech by someone else** to see what they think?
   4. Do you agree that you should **always try to loosen up the audience with humour**?
   5. If you were giving a talk, would you want your friends/colleagues in the audience, **rooting for you**?
   6. What kinds of things can you do to set your **mind at rest** before you get up to speak?

3 **ABOUT YOU** Write your answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B How not to give a presentation

We had to sit through Rob’s disastrous presentation to the group today. We were overloaded with information, and he completely lost sight of the main points; he should have pared it down. He thought a good powerpoint would compensate for poor presentation skills, but nothing could have been further from the truth. Most of the time he spoke too slowly (one or two people were nodding off). Then Dr Eisner asked him a tricky question and you could see the panic set in. When Elaine asked about projected sales, he jumped in before she’d finished, and they ended up at cross purposes. He was hoping it would be the presentation of his life, but instead, he ended up a nervous wreck.

4 Positive or negative? Write P or N.
1 They’re talking at cross purposes.
2 No one nodded off.
3 She gave the talk of her life.
4 Her nerves started to set in.
5 We had to sit through the presentation.
6 He didn’t lose sight of his aims.

5 Complete the conversations. Then underline the full phrasal verbs and idioms.

1 A I got the shock of my today.
   B Why? What happened?
   A Well, I had to sit unfortunately I happened to that someone had posted a video of me snoring on YouTube!
2 A I thought the new accountant was OK, but nothing could be further from the.
   B What do you mean?
   A Well, he dominated the meeting and in every time I tried to speak.
3 A How did your talk go?
   B Well, I was a nervous beforehand, but I’d run it by my boss, and he’d helped it down so it was a lot clearer and shorter. He reminded me not to lose of my main points, and I think in the end it went quite well.

Glossary

sit through sth stay till the end of a speech, performance, etc. that you think is boring or too long.
lose sight of sth stop considering sth and forget about it.
pare sth down reduce the size or amount of sth, especially with lots of small reductions.
nothing could be further from the truth used to emphasize that sth is definitely not true.
nod off INF fall asleep for a short time while sitting in a chair.
set in If sth unpleasant sets in, it starts to have an effect which could continue for a long time. (Panic/The rain/The winter set in.)
jump in interrupt sb while they are talking. SYN butt in. If two people are (talking) at cross purposes they think they are talking about the same thing, but in fact they are not.
a nervous wreck INF a person who is very upset and worried.

spotlight of your life The phrase of your life is used to emphasize that something is the best or worst that you have experienced. It follows a noun or a noun phrase.
He gave the speech of his life. = the best speech he has given.
I had the fright of my life. = the most frightening experience ever.

Communication 97
A First meetings

How did your first meeting go?

OLGA When I met my new boss, it wasn’t exactly a meeting of minds. I didn’t know what to make of him really, and to start with, I just had to play it by ear. But we’re OK now.

JACEK My new host family are fantastic! We got on really well right from the word go. They welcomed me with open arms, and I felt at home almost immediately.

KARIN I met my boyfriend on the Internet and I reckoned we’d be on the same wavelength. But as I was driving to meet him in person, my heart was in my mouth. He was lovely, though, and I was immediately struck by his quirky sense of fun.

Glossary

- a meeting of minds: a situation in which people have similar ideas and opinions.
- make sth of sb/sth: understand or regard sb/sth in a particular way.
- play it by ear: deal with a situation by reacting as things happen, rather than having a plan.
- (right) from the word go: (right) from the beginning.
- with open arms: If you welcome or greet sb with open arms, you welcome them in a very affectionate and enthusiastic way.
- (feel) at home: (feel) comfortable and relaxed.
- be on the same wavelength: INF (of two or more people) think in a similar way about sth.
- my heart was in my mouth: used to say you felt very nervous or frightened about sth.
- be struck by sb/sth: INF be impressed by or interested in sth.

- spotlight to start with: To start/begin with can mean ‘at the beginning’ (as above), but it can also be used to emphasize a list of points to support an argument e.g. The hotel was awful. To start with, the room was dirty, then the service ... SYN for a start.

1 True or false? Write T or F.

1 If you play it by ear, you start out with a clear plan of what you want to do.
2 If there’s a meeting of minds between you and your boss, you understand each other.
3 If you liked your job right from the word go, it means you liked it from the beginning.
4 If you’re on the same wavelength as a colleague, you think in a similar way.
5 If you’re struck by a new colleague’s personality, you don’t like them.
6 If your heart is in your mouth, you’re feeling very worried about something.

2 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

1 Did you feel relaxed with them? ~ Yes, they really made me feel
2 Were they pleased to see you? ~ Yeah, they welcomed me
3 Did you know what she meant? ~ Well, to 
4 Mrs Esposito was very odd, wasn’t she? ~ Hmm, I didn’t know what to make
5 I bet he was nervous before the presentation. ~ Yes, his heart
6 Will you just see how things go? ~ I think that’s best. I’ll just play
7 Why were you fed up? ~ Well, for , the room was cold, then I couldn’t hear what anyone was saying. In the end, I just sat and doodled.
8 Did you have a good rapport with them? ~ Yes, we got on from

3 ABOUT YOU Can you remember any first meetings with people? Who were they with, and how did they go? Write your answer in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B  Badly run meetings

The chairperson may be responsible when a meeting goes badly. Here’s why:

• Participants are allowed to arrive in drabs and drabs.
• They don’t know what’s happening because the chairperson has thrown together the agenda at the last minute, and hasn’t laid down clear rules for the conduct of the meeting.
• Without firm guidance from the chair, one or two people may hold the floor and ramble on for ages, and as a result, the meeting runs over with nothing achieved.
• Poor time management may mean people rush into decisions, or that decisions are left hanging.
• One person at the meeting (often the chairperson) forges ahead with their own agenda, to the detriment of the meeting and the other participants.

Glossary

in drabs and drabs gradually and in small amounts or numbers.
throw sth together make or produce sth in a hurry.
lay sth down officially state rules, principles, etc. that people must obey or follow.
hold the floor speak during a discussion, especially for a long time so that nobody else can speak.
ramble on INF speak about sth for a long time in a boring or confusing way.
rush over continue for longer than planned.
leave sth hanging do sth without thinking carefully about it first.
forge ahead (with sth) fail to make a definite decision or statement about sth.
to the detriment of sth/sb make strong and steady progress with sth.

4 Write sentences using words from each column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I threw ✓</th>
<th>on</th>
<th>and drabs</th>
<th>I threw together some lunch.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>They arrived</td>
<td>was left</td>
<td>so others can’t speak</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don’t rush</td>
<td>ran</td>
<td>some lunch ✓</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’re forging</td>
<td>together ✓</td>
<td>a decision</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The situation</td>
<td>into</td>
<td>with the plans</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She rambled</td>
<td>in drabs</td>
<td>for hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The meeting</td>
<td>the floor</td>
<td>hanging for days</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Don’t hold</td>
<td>ahead</td>
<td>over by half an hour</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

The meeting went on longer than it should have. RUN The meeting ran over.
1 The measures will harm patient care. DETRIMENT
2 The chairperson informed us of the rules of the meeting. LAY
3 Dad wouldn’t stop talking about the wedding. ON
4 Don’t make your mind up too quickly. RUSH
5 The money was released very gradually. DRIBS
6 They produced a video in a hurry. THROW
7 We’re making excellent progress with the project. AHEAD
8 I don’t want to leave the situation unresolved. HANG
A Commenting on a situation

Mrs Aswad told me in no uncertain terms what she thought of Amina Baba.

It's common knowledge Dima's a member of the Communist party. Contrary to popular belief, however, his wife isn't.

It's my car in name only. To all intents and purposes, it belongs to my son.

He agreed to consider an operation on his eye, but only as a last resort.

Mac said we'd get fourteen in the minibus at a push, but strictly speaking it's only supposed to hold twelve.

All things being equal, I'd rather go to university near where I live.

Glossary

in no uncertain terms clearly and directly.
be common knowledge be sth that everyone knows.
contrary to popular belief used to emphasize that what you are saying is the opposite of what many people think.
in name only If sth exists in name only, it is officially described in a particular way, but the description is not really true.
to all intents and purposes used to say that although sth is not exactly true or accurate, the effect is the same as if it were true or accurate.
as a last resort used to say you will do sth only after trying everything else to solve a problem. SYN if all else fails.
at a push/pinch INF If you can do sth at a push/pinch, you can do it, but only with difficulty. = being completely correct and accurate.
strictly speaking used when saying what you would normally choose unless there were special facts to consider.

all (other) things being equal

1 Cover the glossary, then complete the last word of each idiom.
   1. as a last resort
   2. in no uncertain terms
   3. all other things being equal
   4. contrary to popular belief
   5. strictly speaking

2 Complete the dialogues.
   1. Is it your flat? ~ In only. My brother lives there most of the time.
   2. Would you rather give the job to a woman? ~ Yes, all other things being.
   3. Can we get three in the back of the car? ~ Yes, at a.
   4. Are you retired? ~ No, I'm still working, to popular belief.
   5. Do people know about their engagement? ~ Yes, it's common now.
   6. Are they living separately? ~ Yes, to all and purposes.

3 Rewrite the sentences using idioms from above. Keep the meaning the same.
   1. He told me very clearly what he thought of me. All things being equal, I'll vote for Cal.
   2. Everyone knows they're married.
   3. We can only just get six people round the table.
   4. I'll sell the car if there's no other solution.
   5. To be completely accurate, a tomato is a fruit.
   6. Most people think he's Welsh, but it's not true.
B Expressing an attitude

They'll be lucky to find a restaurant open at this time of night.
She's clever, I'll give you that, but I don't trust her.
I think we should help Grandad – it's the very least we can do.
I have to work this weekend, worse luck! Still, I'm on holiday next week, thank goodness.
They all filed in, and last but not least came John.
I thought it was a bit late in the day for the woman to complain about the shoes; she's worn them for two months!
He can go and live in Las Vegas for all I care.
It's all very well for him to say it's not important, but I've worked hard on this project.

Glossary

you'll/they'll, etc. be lucky
I'll give you that
INF used to tell sb/others that what they want probably will not happen.
INF used to admit that sth is true, even though you do not like it, or do not agree with things related to it.

it's the (very) least I can do worse luck!
thank goodness
last but not least
(a bit) late in the day
for all sb cares
it's/that's all very well
(to do sth)

4 Cross out the wrong answer, then underline the full idiom in each sentence.
1 I'll give you a hand tomorrow – it's the least little I can do.
2 They all got here – last and but not least was Tom.
3 I won't be able to see them, worse worst luck.
4 They were better than us. ~ Yeah, I'll give you that.
5 I felt it was a bit later later in the day for her to call off the party.
6 I'm hoping to leave work early today. ~ You'll have be lucky.
7 It's all quite very well for the teacher to say the test was easy - she didn't have to do it.
8 I could be seriously ill for all everything she cares.

5 Express the ideas on the left starting with the words given.

Say it's now too late for Bill to cancel.
It's a bit late in the day for Bill to cancel.
I have to
Kara arrived.
I'll help you –
Miles can live
The weather
You'll

1 Say you're disappointed you have to stay in.
2 Say you're relieved that Kara arrived safely.
3 Tell Ken you'll help him, and wish you could do more.
4 Say you're not bothered if Miles decides to live abroad.
5 Admit that the weather is better in Spain.
6 Tell someone they probably won't find a taxi.
I can use idioms for emphasis

A Adding emphasis

These idioms go within a sentence, or are added at the end, to emphasize what is being said.

It’s **by far** the best film Almodovar has made.
My brother sometimes leaves his bike in the hall **for weeks on end**.
I think we are **well and truly** lost.
Dartmouth is the best place to stay **without a doubt**.
Max was here a minute ago, then he disappeared – **just like that**.
The owner of the shop was very helpful, and gave us a free map **into the bargain**.
My next-door neighbour is **ever such a** kind woman.
He’s **not just any** doctor – he’s a top surgeon.
He hasn’t eaten all day, so **no wonder** he’s hungry.
I’ve spent £200 this week **as it is**.

Glossary

**by far**
(used with comparative and superlative adjectives or adverbs) by a large amount. SYN **far and away**.

**for hours/days/weeks on end**
used for emphasizing how long sth continues.

**well and truly**
INF completely.

**without (a) doubt**
used to emphasize an opinion.

**just like that**
INF suddenly, without warning or explanation.

**into the bargain**
in addition to the things already mentioned.

**ever such (a) / ever so**
INF (used before adjectives/adverbs) very; really.

**not just any**
used to say that sb or sth is not ordinary, but is especially good or important.

**no wonder**
used to emphasize the fact that sth is not surprising.

**as it is**
already (used to express concern that an amount or number will increase further).

1 Replace the word(s) in italics with an idiom that keeps a similar meaning.
   1 He recommended a place to stay, and gave me a lift there **as well**.
   2 Happily the war is now **completely over**.
   3 They were very grateful for our help.
   4 She is **easily** the best student in the class.
   5 He didn’t sleep well, so it’s **not surprising** he’s tired now.
   6 They kept me waiting for a reply for **days and days**.

2 Add an idiom to emphasize what is being said. Rewrite the sentence with the idiom in the correct place.
   ▶ He said he had a problem, and left. **He said he had a problem and left, just like that.**
   1 It’s the best part of town.
   2 He gave me a discount, and wrapped it up nicely.
   3 Karoly’s a generous guy.
   4 Unfortunately the party was over when we arrived.
   5 I think it’s her most interesting novel.
   6 I’ve been back there three times today; I don’t want to go again.
   7 She ate some seafood that was off, so she’s feeling ill.
   8 It’s silk. It’s the finest silk you can buy.
B  Exaggeration

Some idioms give a more colourful and emphatic description of a situation or someone’s state. They are often informal, and more commonly used in spoken English.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neutral message</th>
<th>Exaggerated message</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rodney is better than the rest of us at maths.</td>
<td><em>Rodney is streets ahead of the rest of us at maths</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = much better than the rest. <strong>SYN</strong> head and shoulders above sb <strong>INF</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>My cousin is lazy.</td>
<td><em>My cousin doesn’t do a stroke of work</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = does no work at all.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The two boys get on well.</td>
<td><em>The two boys get on like a house on fire</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = like each other very much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I didn’t know what to say.</td>
<td><em>I was lost for words</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = was so surprised or shocked that I didn’t know what to say.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>There was some trouble at the party.</td>
<td><em>All hell broke loose at the party</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = sth happened which caused people to get angry and start fighting or arguing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I stayed out of his way.</td>
<td><em>I avoided him like the plague</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = was determined to keep away from him completely.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was surprised when he said he was going abroad.</td>
<td><em>I couldn’t believe my ears when he said he was going abroad</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = was extremely surprised.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transport groups are angry about the increased fares.</td>
<td><em>Transport groups are up in arms about the increased fares</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = extremely angry. Also <em>up in arms over sth</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>We’ll have to work hard to get the show ready on time.</td>
<td><em>We’ll have to pull out all the stops to get the show ready on time</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = make the greatest effort possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I’d like to be in his position.</td>
<td><em>I’d give my right arm to be in his position</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = would do anything.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dad was angry about me staying out late and told me off.</td>
<td><em>My dad came down on me like a ton of bricks</em>. <strong>INF</strong> = was extremely angry with me and told me off severely. (It could also mean to punish sb severely.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She talks a lot.</td>
<td><em>She doesn’t half talk a lot!</em> <strong>INF</strong> not half is used to emphasize a statement or opinion.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3  Cover the table above. Match 1–8 with a–h.

1. I avoided them like the ______________________  a. work.
2. I couldn’t believe my ________________________  b. stops.
3. She was lost for ____________________________  c. plague.
4. We’ll have to pull out all the ____________________ d. loose.
5. They get on like a house on ______________________ e. words.
6. He came down on her like a ton of ________________ f. fire.
7. All hell broke ________________________________ g. ears.
8. He doesn’t do a stroke of ______________________ h. bricks.

4  Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals to emphasize what is being said.

- They get on well. FIRE **They get on like a house on fire.**
- She'd love to go waterskiing. ARM **She'd love to go waterskiing.**
- They'll have to work hard. PULL **They’ll have to work hard.**
- They’re very angry over it. ARMS **They’re very angry over it.**
- I was surprised when I heard the news. EARS **I was surprised when I heard the news.**
- They're much better than me. STREETS **They're much better than me.**
- That boy does nothing. STROKE **That boy does nothing.**
- She really told him off. BRICKS **She really told him off.**
- I didn't go anywhere near her. PLAGUE **I didn't go anywhere near her.**
- These guys work hard. HALF **These guys work hard.**
- There was a lot of trouble. HELL **There was a lot of trouble.**
Unit 34

1 The same word is missing from each pair of sentences. Write it in.
   a) Could you __________ me posted, please?
   b) They wanted __________ us in the dark about the results.
   a) She knew I was getting married, but she didn’t __________ on to Jimmy.
   b) I wish they’d __________ me in on the secret; it’s very frustrating!
   a) I’d like a couple of days to mull __________ their offer.
   b) She tried hard to win him __________ , but he refused to be persuaded.
   a) He got __________ of the wrong end of the stick.
   b) I tend to __________ my cards close to my chest.
   a) His actions are at __________ with what he says.
   b) It makes no __________ to me when we leave.
   a) That woman really puts my back __________ !
   b) I’d like you to open __________ to me and tell me what’s wrong.
   a) You’ll be told __________ a need-to-know basis.
   b) She’s very observant; she picked up __________ a tiny detail in the painting.
   a) I decided it was time to put him in the __________ about the new plans.
   b) I’d be grateful if you could keep me in the __________ as things develop.

2 Put the words in order and add one more word.
   the | stick | we | the | got | wrong | of  We got the wrong end of the stick.
   it | take | can’t | all | I
   idea | the | like | our | lines | he | doesn’t | reading
   could | me | it | occurred | she | that | wrong | be
   we | odds | it | him | makes | to | lose | if
   her | she | chest | to | her | plays | close
   to | a | it’s | so | secret | it | yourself

Unit 35

1 Correct the mistakes where necessary. Be careful: some sentences are correct.
   1) If you vote for that party, you’ll take what you deserve.
   2) I agreed with the speaker, but it took him ages to get round the point.
   3) He used to be a model citizen, but for some reason, he got off the rails.
   4) That’s all very well, but I think you’re missing the point completely.
   5) Look, stop beating about the bushes and tell me what you know!
   6) It’s a hard lesson to learn, but the ending justifies the means.
   7) I’ve come to realize that stress at work is a necessary devil.
   8) That woman complains just for the sake of it.
   9) I have several friends who believe in live after death.
   10) Nobody has really got to grips with the problems of the national football team.
   11) It’s no good trying to persuade her; you can’t teach an old cat new tricks.
   12) Why do you always try to save the last word?
2 Read the text, then replace phrases in the text with the items below.

My sister Alicia hates arguing, especially with our brother Freddie; she will avoid it wherever possible ✓. What she finds most irritating is that Freddie likes to disagree with her just for the sake of it, and when he gets very animated, she tells him his behaviour is excessive. She also uses language which is meant to avoid offending anyone, and that really annoys Freddie. Another thing she hates is his habit of interrupting when she’s speaking, and the fact that he always wants to win the argument. Still, Alicia is also quite determined, and if she thinks she’s making a valid point, she won’t accept that she has lost the argument.

—at all costs wherever possible
1 play devil’s advocate
2 he’s gone too far
3 politically correct
4 butting in
5 have the last word
6 back down

Unit 36

1 Choose the best ending to follow each phrasal verb on the left.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Draw on</th>
<th>a some equipment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Set up</td>
<td>b before someone has finished speaking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Come away with</td>
<td>c what you are going to say</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sit through</td>
<td>d for a few minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nod off</td>
<td>e all your experience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Butt in</td>
<td>f some good ideas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loosen up</td>
<td>g a dull talk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pare down</td>
<td>h the audience</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2 Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

1 It’s definitely not true, is it? ~ No, nothing could be further purposes.
2 Was there some misunderstanding? ~ Yes, we were at
3 Has Jim’s advice stopped them worrying? ~ Yes, it’s put their minds
4 You must’ve been very worried. ~ Yes, I was a nervous
5 He didn’t prepare the talk at all, did he? ~ No, he just
6 Did you get there early? ~ Yes, I had about fifteen minutes to
7 That car nearly hit him. ~ Yes, it must have given him the fright
8 Did they come to support you? ~ Oh yes, they were all for me.

Unit 37

1 Rewrite the sentences, starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

— The situation was not resolved.
  1 We have the same way of thinking.
  2 They were very happy to see me.
  3 I’ll react to things as they happen.
  4 I felt incredibly nervous.
  5 We had exactly the same ideas.
  6 He just made the dish in a hurry.

—the situation was left hanging
  1 We’re on
  2 They welcomed me with
  3 I’ll play
  4 My heart was
  5 It was a meeting
  6 He just threw
2 Complete the crossword. Which phrasal verb is spelt out in the grey squares?

1 Make strong and steady progress with something. (5,5)
2 If you state officially that people must obey rules/principles, you ___ rules/principles. (3,4)
3 If something happens from the very beginning, you can also say it happens ___ (4,3,4,2)
4 Gradually, or in small amounts or numbers. (2,5,3,5)
5 Speak during a discussion, especially for a long time so that nobody else can speak. (4,3,5)
6 If something results in harm or damage to something, we can also say it happens to the ___ of something. (9)
7 at the beginning. (2,5,4)
8 continue for longer than planned. (3,4)
The phrasal verb in the grey squares is ___

Unit 38

1 Complete the definitions with one or two words.

1 If you do something ___ last resort, you do it because all other methods or solutions have ___ .
2 If you say something has happened ___ bit late in the day, you probably feel ___ .
3 If you say ‘thank goodness’ when someone arrives, it means that you ___ they have got there.
4 If a country is a democracy ___ name only, it means that country is ___
5 If someone says what they think of you ___ no uncertain terms, they tell you ___ at what she has said.
6 If you say ‘that’s all very well for her to say’, you are expressing ___ in what you do next.
7 If someone says, ‘you can leave for all I care’, it means he is ___ about meeting him.
8 ___

2 Complete the sentences with the most suitable idiom from the box.

I’ll give you that    thank goodness    in no uncertain terms    at a push    it’s the least I can do    worse luck    to all intents and purposes    contrary to popular belief

1 He wasn’t happy, and he told us so ___.
2 I’d like to go with you, but I’ve got to go to the dentist’s, ___.
3 There’s not much space, but we could put the sofa in that corner ___.
4 You were right about the food being poor, ___.
5 I can’t drive you home, but I’ll take you to the bus station – ___.
6 His name is Falcone, but ___ he isn’t Italian, and has never been to Italy in his life.
7 It was a terrible journey, but we got there in the end, ___.
8 Originally it was my brother who bought the flat, but I’m living there and paying the mortgage and all the bills, so ___.
Unit 39

1 One word is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.
   ▶ He's ever a nice man. such
   1 I hadn't expected him to say that, and I was just lost words.
   2 It's far the best DVD player you can buy.
   3 I made a mistake, and she came on me like a ton of bricks.
   4 They're giving away free drinks, so wonder the bar is full.
   5 A digital radio is the best one for you to get a doubt.
   6 My sister doesn't phone me for weeks end.
   7 They sent me a new printer, and a replacement cartridge the bargain.
   8 This is just any champagne; this is the best.

2 Complete the dialogues. The second speaker uses more exaggeration.
   ▶ A Their relationship is over, isn't it?
     B Yes, it's well and truly over.

1 A He's terribly lazy.
   B Yes, he never of work.

2 A She seemed annoyed about the contract.
   B Yeah, she was up in it.

3 A I like Milos.
   B Yes, he's so nice.

4 A They're good friends, aren't they?
   B Yes, they get on like fire.

5 A Martin's a much better candidate.
   B I agree, he's above the rest.

6 A So you'd really like to meet her?
   B You bet. I'd give just to speak to her.

7 A It's astonishing news, isn't it?
   B I know – I ears.

8 A He's made a big effort with this contract.
   B Yes, he's stops.
A Why do people tell lies?

I was scared to death of telling the truth about my past: I knew people would disapprove.

I decided to keep the truth from my mum to spare her feelings.

I didn’t let on to my friends that I’d lost my job; I didn’t want to lose face, I guess.

In retrospect, I realize that I just couldn’t face up to the truth about my addiction: that’s why I lied.

I made a terrible decision at work, and then tried to cover it up and prevent the facts from coming to light. It was stupid of me.

Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>scared to death</td>
<td>INF very frightened. (Also scare sb to death make sb very frightened. SYN scare the life/the living daylights out of sb INF.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>keep sth from sb</td>
<td>avoid telling sb sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spare sb’s feelings</td>
<td>be careful not to do or say anything that may upset sb.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>let on (to sb / about sth)</td>
<td>INF talk about sth that is intended to be secret. (If you save face, you avoid being regarded as stupid or wrong.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lose face</td>
<td>be regarded by others as stupid or wrong as a result of sth you have said or done. (If you save face, you avoid being regarded as stupid or wrong.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>face up to sth</td>
<td>accept and deal with sth that is difficult or unpleasant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>come to light</td>
<td>become known to people.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight Hiding information**

These phrasal verbs refer to action taken to hide the truth about something bad, illegal, embarrassing, etc.

Politicians tried to cover up the scandal. cover-up N.
The boy stole the chocolates but his parents hushed it up.

1 Complete the sentences.

1. I didn’t tell her the truth because I wanted to keep her feelings.
2. People will be very angry if this information comes to light.
3. I knew they were getting married but I didn’t let them know to anyone.
4. I didn’t tell him what actually happened because I was scared to lose face.
5. It was a scandal in the village. They tried to cover it up, but everyone knew.
6. My grandfather was very ill, but the rest of the family kept the truth from him.
7. I think she lied because it was easier than coming to light.

2 Use an idiom or phrasal verb to explain why the underlined people lied in these situations. Use a different idiom or phrasal verb in each answer.

- The boy was very ill, but his parents didn’t tell him. They wanted to keep it from him.
1. Ann had a bruise on her face, but her best friend told her it looked OK.
2. Mary knew her best friend was pregnant, but she kept it secret.
3. A young boy lost his strict father’s expensive watch, but denied it.
4. Joe couldn’t read or write, but he told people he’d forgotten his glasses.
5. Doctors said she wouldn’t walk again, but she refused to believe it.
B  Who are more honest?

Men or Women?

'My wife Marcia goes red as a beetroot whenever she tells a lie, and that gives the game away. She's worried that if she tells a lie, she'll have it on her conscience, and she can't live with that. But when it comes to glossing over the truth, she's pretty good at that!' 

'When my husband Jeremy comes home late after a football match, he often tells me a pack of lies about why he's late. He thinks he can pull the wool over my eyes, but I see through him immediately (I know he's been to the pub). And if I dare to say, 'Oh, come on – I wasn't born yesterday!' he gets quite upset.'

Glossary

go (as) red as a beetroot  have red cheeks because you are embarrassed.
give the game away  reveal sth that is intended to be a secret (often by accident).
have sth on your conscience  feel guilty because of sth you did or didn't do.
live with sth  accept sth unpleasant that you cannot change.
when it comes to (doing) sth  on the subject of sth.
gloss over sth  ignore sth or avoid saying sth, or treat it as unimportant.
a pack of lies  INF a story that is completely untrue.
pull the wool over sb’s eyes  INF trick sb by giving them the wrong information.
see through sb/sth  realize that sb is not telling the truth, or that sth is not true; understand the truth about a situation.
I wasn’t born yesterday  INF = I'm not stupid enough to believe what you say. SYN pull the other one INF.

4 One word is either missing or wrong in these sentences. Add the missing word or correct the mistake.
1 He wouldn’t lie because he’d have it in his conscience.
2 When it comes helping others, my parents are fantastic.
3 It was a ridiculous story – look, I wasn’t yesterday.
4 Of course, as soon as she mentioned your name, she gave the game up.
5 That girl told me packs of lies.
6 He’s always trying to pull the wool over my ears.
7 His wife will never come back, and he finds that very difficult to live.
8 Unfortunately, when I made up the story, my aunt looked through it immediately.

5 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps the same meaning.
1 It’s a horrible situation, but we’ll just have to accept it.
2 Mark’s story was completely untrue.
3 If I don’t tell them the truth, I’ll feel guilty.
4 When I mentioned Claude’s name, Pam looked very embarrassed.
5 It’s not very sensible to ignore or avoid the facts.
6 On the subject of lying, the headmaster takes it very seriously.

6 ABOUT YOU  Do you think men are more honest than women? Do you think men are better liars? Write your answer in your notebook, or talk to another student.
I can talk about competition

A Who will win ‘Dancing Stars’?

Corinne and Jason set the pace from week one, and forged ahead of the rest. They slipped up a bit in their first dance last week, but they’re still going to take some beating.

Pam and Mike are the dark horses in this competition. They’ve been gaining ground week by week, and I think they might be keeping something up their sleeve.

Alex and Sylvia are neck and neck with Pam and Mike. Now the competition is hotting up, the smallest thing could tip the balance in one couple’s favour. It’s impossible to say who’ll come out on top.

Glossary

set the pace
forge ahead (with sth)
slip up
take some beating
gain ground (on sb)
keep/have sth up your sleeve
hot up
tip the balance (in sb’s favour)
come out on top

establish a standard or rate that others have to try to achieve.
make strong and steady progress with sth.
INF make a careless mistake. slip-up N.
INF If sb will take some beating, it means they are very good and it will be hard for sb else to do better. SYN be hard to beat.
gradually get closer to people you are competing with. SYN catch up (with sb).
keep a plan or idea secret until you need it.
infr become more exciting or show an increase in activity.
give a slight advantage to sb.
be more successful than the others.

spotlight Idioms from horse racing

A dark horse was a racehorse that nobody knew anything about. Now it refers to a person who other people know very little about, especially one who might achieve something that you don’t expect. Two horses that are neck and neck in a race are level with each other. Now we also use it about two people or two teams in a race or competition.

1 Are the meanings similar or different? Write S or D.

1 They’re setting the pace. They’re neck and neck. D
2 They’ll take some beating. They’ll be hard to beat. S
3 They’re gaining ground. They’re catching up. D
4 The competition is hotting up. The competition is slipping up. S
5 They’re forging ahead. They’re gaining ground. D

2 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of the word in capitals. Keep the same meaning.

They’re making great progress. FORGE they’re forging ahead.
1 They’re level with each other. NECK
2 They’re catching up. GROUND
3 It could give you a slight advantage. BALANCE
4 The race is getting more exciting. HOT
5 She’ll take some beating. HARD
6 He could surprise us. HORSE
7 She made a mistake. SLIP
8 I think he has a secret plan he’s holding back. SLEEVE
B And the winner is....

I think the result was in the balance right up to that last dance, but we gave it our all and in the end it just came down to the judges' decision. The whole competition has been brilliant, and winning it is just a dream come true.

Well, we gave it our best shot, but it wasn’t quite good enough. I thought we could pull it off with that last dance, but it wasn’t to be. Maybe we paid the price for playing it safe – I don’t know. Anyway, it was a close thing, and when I look back on the competition as a whole, I’m proud of what we’ve achieved.

Glossary

in the balance give it your all come down to sth/sb a dream come true give sth your best shot pull sth off pay the price for (doing) sth play (it) safe look back (on sth)

If the result of sth is in the balance, it is uncertain.
make the maximum possible effort.
If a situation comes down to sth, that thing is the most important factor.
INF sth that happens which you have wanted for a long time.
INF try as hard as you possibly can in doing sth.
INF succeed in doing sth that is difficult.
suffer as a result of bad luck, a mistake, or sth you have done.
not take any big risks.
think about a past event.

spotlight a close thing/shave/call

A close thing is a situation in which success or failure is equally possible.
A close shave/call is when you just manage to avoid a dangerous situation or accident.

3 Complete the last word in each dialogue.

1. You did everything you could. ~ Yes, I gave it my best.
2. You didn’t take too many risks? ~ No, we decided to play it.
3. How much do you want to win? ~ It would be a dream come.
4. You nearly had an accident then. ~ Yes, it was a close.
5. Are you confident about the result? ~ Yes, I still think we can pull it.

4 Complete the text.

I remember when Federer played Nadal at Wimbledon. They (1) it their all for over three hours of brilliant tennis and it all came (2) to the final fifth set. In the end Nadal (3) off an incredible victory, but (4) back on it, I think Federer will feel he paid the (5) for only succeeding with one of the thirteen break points that he had. For Nadal, it was his first Wimbledon title, and a (6) come true.

5 ABOUT YOU Have the sentences been true for you in a competition, or for a team you support? Write your answers, or talk to another student.

Winning it was a dream come true. Winning the championship was a dream come true. I’d been practising for months.
I gave it my best shot but it wasn’t quite good enough.
I was amazed I pulled it off.
Looking back on it, I paid the price for …

Human behaviour 111
A Funny or not funny?

You're pulling my leg!

He's having you on!

TYPES OF HUMOUR

She said it tongue in cheek.

She loves practical jokes.

I laughed my head off.

We were in stitches.

FUNNY

They had a good laugh about it.

A broken leg is no laughing matter.

NOT FUNNY

The joke fell flat.

It got beyond a joke.

Glossary

pull sb's leg a practical joke

INF tell sb sth which is not true, as a joke. SYN have sb on INF.
a trick which is intended to surprise sb or make them look silly, often involving physical actions (you play a practical joke on sb).

tongue in cheek

If you say sth (with) tongue in cheek or with your tongue in your cheek, you are not being serious and mean it as a joke.

laugh your head off

INF laugh loudly and for a long time. SYN be in stitches INF.

have a good laugh (about sth)

don't find sth very funny and amusing.

fall flat

If a joke falls flat, no one laughs at it.

be/get/go beyond a joke

If a situation has got beyond a joke, it has become annoying or worrying. sth which is too serious to make jokes about.

1 Answer the questions with 'yes' or 'no'.

1 If someone is pulling your leg, should you believe them?
2 If something is beyond a joke, is it very funny?
3 If someone puts a frog in your bed, is that a practical joke?
4 If someone says something tongue in cheek, are they being serious?
5 If someone is having you on, are they telling you something which is true?
6 If you are in stitches, are you laughing?

2 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep the meaning the same.

1 They all found it very amusing.
   They all had a good
2 You're having me on.
   You're pulling
3 No one laughed at her jokes.
   Her jokes fell
4 She was saying it as a joke.
   She was saying it tongue
5 It's no longer a laughing matter.
   It's gone
6 He laughed his head off.
   He was in

3 ABOUT YOU Write answers to the questions in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 Do you ever play practical jokes on people? If so, what kind?
2 Do you often have people on? If so, what about?
3 Do you often say things tongue in cheek? If so, who to?
4 Do you ever tell jokes that fall flat? Can you remember any?
5 When was the last time you had a good laugh?
### B Humorous idioms

Idioms are quite often used for ironic or humorous effect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Idiom and example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Where did he get those CDs?  
~ I think they fell off the back of a lorry. | If you say sth has fallen off the back of a lorry, you mean it is probably stolen. |
| I can jump over that gate.  
~ Famous last words. | famous last words saying used when you think sb is being too confident about sth that is going to happen or that they are going to do. |
| Is he always that silly?  
~ Yes. I'm afraid the lights are on but no one's home. | the lights are on but no one's / nobody's home used to say that sb is stupid. |
| When was the last time he had a bath?  
~ I dread to think. | I dread to think = I'm afraid to think about that question as the answer might be too terrible or unpleasant. |
| For reasons best known to himself, my father's bought a house next door to a zoo. | for reasons best known to himself/herself etc. used to say that you don't know or understand why sb has done sth. |
| I'm off to bed. I need my beauty sleep. | beauty sleep sleep that you need in order to feel healthy and look attractive. |
| Did Dr Fellows explain what to do?  
~ Yes. But it was as clear as mud. | (as) clear as mud = very hard to understand. |
| Matthew said he would help us.  
~ Oh dear. That's the kiss of death, then. | the kiss of death an action or situation that will bring bad luck or spoil an activity. |
| Where's Alfie?  
~ A call of nature, I think. | (a/the) call of nature a need to go to the toilet. |
| My sister thinks she can paint the whole house in a weekend.  
~ Goodness. What planet is she on? | What planet is he/she on? used to say that sb's ideas are not realistic or practical (also sb is (living) on another planet). |

4 Correct the mistake in each sentence, and write the correct word at the end.

1. I can do it. ~ Yeah, famous lost words.
2. Where did you get that? ~ It fell off the back of a train.
3. He's a bit stupid, isn't he? ~ Yeah, the lights are on but no one's here.
4. I need to get my beautiful sleep. See you in the morning.
5. Marty doesn't think we'll have to pay for drinks. ~ Gosh. What plane is he on?
6. That explanation was as clean as mud.
7. Marcel walked home in bare feet ~ for reasons better known to himself.

5 Respond to the first speaker. Include a suitable idiom in your answer.

- He's taking ages to fill in that form. ~ Yeah, the lights are on but no one's home.
  1. His flat's always dirty. How often does he clean it? ~
  2. I didn't understand a word of that explanation, did you? ~
  3. Why do you always go to bed so early? ~
  4. My brother is bringing boring old Malcolm to my party. ~
  5. Why are those radios so cheap? ~
  6. The boss told me he thinks we all like working late. ~
  7. He thinks he can beat all the girls easily. ~
  8. Where has Cathy gone? ~
I hate Cheap Air!

ANTON: I'm sick to death of being treated like a second class citizen. At check-in, they managed to squeeze a cool €130 out of me just to board the plane – it was daylight robbery. And frankly, the attitude of the staff is beyond me, but I reckon they're badly treated so they just take it out on the passengers.

JEZEBEL: It said in the paper they're going to start charging for hand luggage!! If that isn't a rip-off, I don't know what is ... but I wouldn't put it past them!

RUDY: All those adverts of smiling passengers – why do we all fall for it every time? Listen, people, if you're so fed up with them, why don't you vote with your feet?

Glossary

- **sick to death of sth/sb**: INF very annoyed or unhappy about sth that has lasted a long time. SYN sick to the back teeth of sth/sb.
- **squeeze sth out of sb**: get sth by putting pressure on sb.
- **daylight robbery**: INF used to say you think sth is much too expensive.
- **be beyond sb**: INF be impossible for sb to understand or imagine.
- **take sth out on sb**: be unpleasant to sb or punish them for sth that is not their fault, often because you are angry or upset.
- **a rip-off**: INF If sth is a rip-off, it is more expensive than it should be. rip sb off V. INF used to say you wouldn't be surprised if sb did sth bad or unusual because it would be typical of them.
- **I wouldn't put it past sb (to do sth)**: be tricked into believing sth that is not true. SYN be taken in by sth/sb.
- **fall for sth**: show that you do not support or agree with sth/sb by not going somewhere or by walking away.
- **vote with your feet**: INF used to say you wouldn't be surprised if sb did sth bad or unusual because it would be typical of them.

1. Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.
   1. The plane ticket's gone up by 3 per cent – it's daytime | daylight robbery.
   2. Did you manage to squeeze | squash the truth out of Jake?
   3. The students voted with their feet | legs and abandoned the lecture hall.
   4. I'm just sick to death | the back teeth of working sixty hours a week.
   5. Jenny may not invite either of us – I wouldn't put it beyond | past her.
   6. Did you really believe I would fall to | for that old trick?

2. Complete the dialogues.
   - They refused to come to the meeting. ~ That's right, they voted with their feet
     1. I know she's capable of stealing. ~ Yeah, I wouldn't
     2. It was a ridiculous price to charge. ~ I know, it was a
     3. How can they charge so much? ~ I know, it's daylight
     4. It's shocking that she lied about it. ~ Yeah, it's why she would do that.
     5. I'm amazed that he fooled you. ~ I know, I can't believe that I it.
     6. You must be tired of all the travelling. ~ Too right; I'm sick
     7. So they made you pay another €20. ~ Yeah, they me.
     8. He shouted at me but I'd done nothing wrong. ~ Yeah, he was fed up and took it you.

3. ABOUT YOU Have you ever had any problems with bad companies? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B Is criticism acceptable?

SONIA So how did the interview go, David?

DAVID Well, no disrespect to the interviewers, but I found them quite aggressive to put it mildly.

SONIA To be fair, that’s their job, isn’t it? You say what you think, and they pull it to pieces. That’s what interviews are like – you shouldn’t take it personally.

DAVID OK, that’s fair enough, but I didn’t expect the chairman to jump down my throat every time I opened my mouth. The thing is, I’m all for healthy discussion, but he just seemed to have a bee in his bonnet about expenses claims.

SONIA Well, it probably isn’t very wise to argue the toss with any interviewer, let alone the company chairman. Better luck with your next interview!

Glossary

no disrespect (to sb) used when you are going to criticize sb and do not want to seem rude or offend them.

to put it mildly / and that’s putting it mildly used to say that you could have used much stronger words to describe sth.

to be fair used when you are defending yourself or sb/sth against criticism. SYN let’s be fair.

pull/tear sb/sth to pieces INF criticize sb or their ideas very severely. SYN pull/tear sb/sth to shreds.

take sth personally INF used to say that something seems reasonable, but you do not agree with it completely.

fair enough INF react very angrily to sb in an unfair way.

jump down sb’s throat INF think or talk about sth all the time and think that it is very important.

be all for sth / for doing sth INF to argue against a decision, especially when it is too late to change it or it is not very important.

have a bee in your bonnet INF used to say that sth is even less suitable or possible than another unsuitable or unlikely thing.

argue the toss used to say that sth should be done. OPP be dead set against sth.

4 Cross out one word in each sentence which is not necessary.

1 There isn’t enough food for the four of us, let us alone the rest of the class.
2 If you want to leave school, be fair enough, but don’t expect any help from me.
3 She didn’t mean to upset you; don’t take it out personally.
4 I’m all in for people contributing ideas, but we’ve got to make a decision very soon.
5 Mum is all dead set against us moving to the country, and I can understand why.
6 I only said I thought he could do better, but he jumped in down my throat!

5 One word is missing in each line of text. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

My dad has a [_____] in his bonnet about me and my studies. I want to become [_____] a musician, but he’s set against that. We had a row about it last night – it was my fault. I should know better than to argue with him late at night. The thing is, disrespect to Dad, but I feel that I should give it a go, and be fair, it is my life! I gave him a couple of reasons why I should leave college, and of course he completely pulled my arguments to, and that’s it mildly! He wants me to study law, just as he did, but it really doesn’t interest me, and I think he takes that. And if I don’t make it as a musician, I still won’t get a job in the City, alone become a lawyer.

[_____]
A How to survive a plane crash

- Watch the flight attendant's safety demonstration: ignore it, and you could be missing out on vital information about how to brace yourself should the plane crash. And read the safety card in front of your seat: even if you fly often, it does no harm to be reminded.

- It makes sense to keep your seat belt on at all times, especially if you fall asleep.

- Take note of the nearest emergency exits. Count the rows between them and your seat.

- In the event of a crash, speed is of the essence. Stay calm and don’t get swept along with the hysteria. Keep your wits about you: you’ll stand a better chance of surviving.

Glossary

miss out (on sth) lose the opportunity to have or do sth.
make sense (to do sth) be a sensible thing to do.
at all times (used especially in instructions, announcements, etc.) always.
take note (of sth) pay attention to sth and be sure to remember it.
in the event of sth if sth happens.
of the essence necessary and very important.
sweep sb along If a situation or feeling sweeps you along, you are so involved in it that you forget about other things.
keep your wits about you be aware of what is happening around you and ready to act and think quickly (also keep your head).

stand a chance of (doing) sth have the possibility of succeeding in sth.

spotlight Advice

These phrases are used to suggest that someone should do something:
It does/would do no harm to ask for help.
There’s no harm in asking for more time to finish the work.
It wouldn’t hurt to take an umbrella with you.

1 Correct one word which is wrong in each sentence.

1 Keep your wit about you. 5 There’s no hurt in asking her.
2 In an event of fire, leave quickly. 6 It makes sensible to do it now.
3 Don’t miss out of this opportunity. 7 Take note for what he says.
4 You stay a good chance of winning. 8 It wouldn’t harm to try it.

2 Complete the advice for nervous flyers.

Fear of flying is surprisingly common. The important thing is not to let yourself get (1) along by your own fear, and to (2) your head while on the plane at all (3). When you step onto the plane, it would do (4) to let the air crew know you are feeling nervous: they may help to reassure you. Be sure to listen and take (5) of the safety tips they give before take-off. Whenever you start to feel panicky, positive thinking is of the (6) : calm yourself by imagining that rather than being in the air, you are in a crowded living room. In the (7) of turbulence during the flight, bear in mind that this is very common and not dangerous. And lastly, don’t avoid air travel – you could be (8) on some wonderful adventures!
B Advice on sleeping

COFFEEGEEK ➤ I can’t sleep at night; I just lie there looking at the moon. ® HEELPP!

JOJO ➤ Hi, I’m no expert by any stretch of the imagination, but it stands to reason that sleeping in complete darkness promotes better sleep. Shut your curtains or blinds!

ALL ➤ I’ve been in the same boat as you, so I feel for you. My dad says that if all else fails, read the most boring book you can find. And don’t get worked up about not sleeping – it only makes things worse.

YI ➤ My advice – for what it’s worth! If you’re lying there for hours, you could do worse than put on a relaxation CD, with the sounds of the ocean.

GINNIE23 ➤ Your best bet is to avoid caffeine and alcohol – especially alcohol, because it keeps you from falling into a deep sleep. Hope this helps.

Glossary

(not) by any stretch of the imagination used to say strongly that sth is not true, even if you try to imagine it. = it is obvious or logical (that …).

it stands to reason (that …) INF be in the same difficult situation.

be in the same boat INF have sympathy for sb.

feel for sb used to say that if other methods do not succeed, there is one last thing you can try. SYN as a last resort.

if all else fails INF get very excited, angry, or upset about sth (also work yourself up (about sth)).

get worked up (about sth) INF used to emphasize that sth is only your opinion or suggestion, and you are not sure how helpful it is.

for what it’s worth INF used to advise sb to do or try sth.

you could do worse than INF the thing that gives the best chance of success.

your best bet prevent sb from doing sth

keep sb from doing sth

3 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1. We’ve both just had pay cuts, so really we’re in the boat.
2. OK, the plates are dirty, but don’t get so up about it. I’ll wash them later.
3. What it’s worth, I don’t share your views on child rearing.
4. I find that taking these pills me from feeling nervous.
5. Look, it stands to that no sensible person would buy that car.
6. You couldn’t describe him as clever by any of the imagination.
7. You know that if all fails, you can always stay in my house.
8. If you’re eating out, you do worse than the North China restaurant.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

➤ If you want my opinion, he’s useless. WORTH For what it’s worth, he’s useless.

1. I have great sympathy for her at this time. FEEL
2. We’re both in a difficult situation. BOAT
3. The best thing you can do is to say nothing. BET
4. Try not to become over-excited about the plan. WORKED
5. It’s not a bad idea to stay in a B and B. WORSE
6. As a last resort, you can refuse to work. FAIL

5 ABOUT YOU Write your own advice about getting a good night’s sleep in your notebook, or talk to another student. Use for what it’s worth, your best bet, you could do worse than, if all else fails.
Advice on sleeping

COFFEEGEEK: I can’t sleep at night; I just lie there looking at the moon. ☀️ HEEELP!

JOJO: Hi, I’m no expert by any stretch of the imagination, but it stands to reason that sleeping in complete darkness promotes better sleep. Shut your curtains or blinds!

ALL: I’ve been in the same boat as you, so I feel for you. My dad says that if all else fails, read the most boring book you can find. And don’t get worked up about not sleeping – it only makes things worse.

YI: My advice – for what it’s worth! If you’re lying there for hours, you could do worse than put on a relaxation CD, with the sounds of the ocean.

GINNIE23: Your best bet is to avoid caffeine and alcohol – especially alcohol, because it keeps you from falling into a deep sleep. Hope this helps.

Glossary

(not) by any stretch of the imagination
it stands to reason (that …)
be in the same boat
feel for sb
if all else fails
get worked up (about sth)
for what it’s worth
you could do worse than
your best bet
keep sb from doing sth

used to say strongly that sth is not true, even if you try to imagine it. = it is obvious or logical (that …).
INF be in the same difficult situation.
have sympathy for sb.
used to say that if other methods do not succeed, there is one last thing you can try. SYN as a last resort.
INF get very excited, angry, or upset about sth (also work yourself up (about sth)).
INF used to emphasize that sth is only your opinion or suggestion, and you are not sure how helpful it is.
used to advise sb to do or try sth.
INF the thing that gives the best chance of success.
prevent sb from doing sth.

3 One word is missing in each line. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

1 We’ve both just had pay cuts, so really we’re in the boat.
2 OK, the plates are dirty, but don’t get so up about it. I’ll wash them later.
3 What it’s worth, I don’t share your views on child rearing.
4 I find that taking these pills me from feeling nervous.
5 Look, it stands to that no sensible person would buy that car.
6 You couldn’t describe him as clever by any of the imagination.
7 You know that if all fails, you can always stay in my house.
8 If you’re eating out, you do worse than the North China restaurant.

4 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. The meaning must stay the same.

If you want my opinion, he’s useless. WORTH For what it’s worth, he’s useless.

1 I have great sympathy for her at this time. FEEL
2 We’re both in a difficult situation. BOAT
3 The best thing you can do is to say nothing. BET
4 Try not to become over-excited about the plan. WORKED
5 It’s not a bad idea to stay in a B and B. WORSE
6 As a last resort, you can refuse to work. FAIL

5 ABOUT YOU Write your own advice about getting a good night’s sleep in your notebook, or talk to another student. Use for what it’s worth, your best bet, you could do worse than, if all else fails.
A Problem solving

Thinking through a problem

- Is it a genuine problem, or just a storm in a teacup?
- If it’s real, what’s the root cause? Is it a person? Someone who has a chip on their shoulder for example, or someone digging their heels in and refusing to compromise?
- How big is the problem? Can you sort it out easily, or will you have your work cut out?
- How will you solve it? Take the bull by the horns, or sit tight for the moment?

Whatever you do, be clear about your course of action. Don’t fall into the trap of doing neither one thing nor the other. Consider all the options, make your decision, and then act on it.

Glossary

think sth through
a storm in a teacup
have a chip on your shoulder

consider everything that could happen in a situation.
a lot of anger and worry about sth unimportant.
INF be sensitive about or feel offended by sth, as a result of sth that happened in your past. (See Unit 2.)

dig your heels in / dig in your heels
have your work cut out
take the bull by the horns
sit tight
fall into the trap (of doing sth)
act on/upon sth

refuse to do sth or change your mind about sth.
INF have a very difficult task or job to do.
face a difficult situation in a very direct and confident way.
stay where you are, without taking any action.
make a mistake that many people make.
take action as a result of a decision, advice, or information.

spotlight Meanings of sort sth out

I’ll sort out the problem. = deal with it and solve it (as above).
The study’s a mess. Could you sort it out? = tidy it.
I need to sort out the insurance. = arrange it successfully.

1 Form six idioms using words from the box. You need to add more words to most of them.

dig  storm  horns  fall  chip  sit  bull  teacup  tight  heels  shoulder  trap

2 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep the meaning the same.

- I spent the day tidying up the office. OUT I spent the day sorting out the office.
- He made the mistake of doing everything himself. TRAP
- She’s made her choice; she must do something about it. ACT
- He thinks the world is against him. CHIP
- I would stay where you are and do nothing. SIT
- He’s refusing to change his mind. HEELS
- She has to consider what might happen. THINK
- It will be a difficult task for you. CUT OUT
- I was asked to deal with the problem. SORT
- It’s a lot of fuss about nothing. STORM
- He’s going to confront the situation directly. HORNS
B  A teenage problem

ELLE  Jonathan’s got important exams **coming up**, and his girlfriend’s just **finished with** him. He’s in a terrible state – I don’t know what to do. He’s even **off his food**.

SIAN  Come on, it’s **not the end of the world**; he’ll **get over** it.

ELLE  But with these exams **hanging over** his head! In his present **frame of mind**, he’ll fail.

SIAN  I don’t think so. Jonathan’s a bright boy. **At the end of the day** I’m sure he’ll **pull himself together** and **sail through** his exams.

ELLE  I don’t know. Teenage relationships and school exams: what a **recipe for disaster**!

**Glossary**

**finish with sb**
end a romantic relationship with sb.

**be in a (terrible) state (about sth)**
be very anxious (about sth).

**be off your food**
not want to eat, usually because you are ill or upset.

**not the end of the world**
INFL not the worst thing that could happen.

**get over sth**
recover from sth such as a disappointment or illness.

**hang over sb / sb’s head**
If sth difficult or unpleasant is **hanging over you / your head**, you are thinking and worrying about it.

**frame of mind**
the way you think or feel about sth at a particular time.

**at the end of the day**
INFL used to introduce a fact that remains true when everything else has been considered.

**pull yourself together**
regain control of your feelings and behave calmly.

**sail through sth**
pass an exam, test, etc. without any difficulty.

**a recipe for disaster**
a thing that is likely to cause sth bad to happen.

**spotlight Meanings of come up**

*The race is coming up at 6 p.m.* = is going to happen in the near future (as above).

*The subject came up in conversation.* = was mentioned or discussed.

*Your number came up, so you’ve won.* = was chosen.

3  Complete the dialogues. You may need more than one word.

- Will she be upset if she fails? ~ Yes, but it’s not the end **of the world**.
- Won’t he eat anything? ~ No, he’s **off his food**.
- Do you think he’ll pass the exam easily? ~ Oh yes, he’ll **hang over** it.
- Is she very anxious about the tests? ~ Yes, she’s **in a terrible state**.
- The disappointment won’t last. ~ I know. He’ll **get over** it.
- This will cause all sorts of problems. ~ I know. It’s a **recipe for disaster**.
- Has Lisa ended the relationship? ~ Yes, she’s **off his food**.
- Did they discuss the new bus route? ~ Yes, the subject **came up**.
- He must control his feelings and stay calm. ~ Hmm, he needs to **pull himself together**.

4  Complete the text.

Charlotte hasn’t been in the most positive (1) **frame of mind** recently. She’s got an interview (2) **up next week** for a job at the BBC. She’s had it (3) **over her** for almost a month and she’s in a real (4) **state** about it. It’s silly really, because I’m sure she’ll (5) **sail through** the interview. And even if she doesn’t, it’s not the end of the (6) **frame of mind**. I know Charlotte’s a very talented girl, and at the end of the (7) **frame of mind**, that’s what matters.
A A positive attitude

My brother’s always loved surfing; he **lives and breathes** it. When he’s out on the waves, he’s really **in his element**. Mum thinks he spends too much time surfing and not enough studying, but he just says, ‘**life’s too short** to waste time worrying.’

I took Martin skiing a couple of years ago and he absolutely **threw himself into** it and **took to** it **like a duck to water**. When we’re on the slopes **there’s no stopping** him till the sun goes down. He **gets** a bit **carried away** at times!

Lia’s take on life is that good things generally **come her way**; she **writes off** any bad events as **isolated incidents**. It seems that **luck is on her side**.

**Glossary**

- **live and breathe sth** spend much of your time doing sth you love.
- **be in your element** be very happy and comfortable in a situation.
- **throw yourself into sth** begin to do sth with energy and enthusiasm.
- **take to sth like a duck to water** learn a new skill quickly and easily.
- **there’s no stopping sb** used to say that it is impossible to prevent sb from doing sth.
- **get carried away** INF become so excited or involved in sth that you lose control of your feelings or actions.
- **come your way** happen to you or become available to you.
- **write sth off (as sth)** decide that sth is a failure and not worth doing anything about.
- **luck is on your side** If **luck is on your side**, things happen the way you want them to.

**spotlight Sayings about life**

- **Life’s too short**. INF = Don’t waste time doing unimportant things.
- **Life goes on**. INF = Even though sb has had a bad experience, the rest of life goes on unchanged.
- **That’s life!** INF = You have to accept disappointments as part of life.

1 Correct the mistake in each sentence.

1 They said my eyesight will never be the same. Well, this is life, I guess.

2 If you don’t get the job, write the experience out as bad luck.

3 Once she starts work in the garden, she’s no stopping her.

4 He’s obsessive about work and throws him into it.

5 She’d never played chess before, but she looked to it like a duck to water.

6 He got the job easily; I’d say that luck’s by his side.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 You’ve made far too much food for us! ~ Sorry, I just got

2 I’ve got to read through 200 emails on my computer. ~ Leave them! Life

3 How did Hari’s skiing lesson go? ~ Great! He took to it.

4 I had my chances in the game. ~ Yeah, but you lost. I guess luck

5 Mark’s obsessive about fishing, isn’t he? ~ Yes, he lives 

6 So you’ve put your disappointment behind you. ~ Yeah, life doesn’t it.

7 Would you want the job? ~ Well, if the chance my , I’d take it.

8 Was she happy doing the cooking? ~ Yes. She’s in her in the kitchen.
B Negative thinking

Avoid these types of negative thinking!

- DON’T dwell on the negatives when something goes wrong in your life.
- DON’T put yourself down for minor slip-ups. Just accept them and move on.
- DON’T jump to negative conclusions. Wait and see how things pan out.
- DON’T bury your head in the sand. Face up to your problems; it helps in the long run.
- DON’T allow negative thoughts to run through your mind, or you will start to see everything in a bad light. Stay POSITIVE.
- DON’T set yourself goals which you can’t live up to, such as ‘I must get 100 per cent in the test’.

Glossary

dwell on/upon sth  spend time thinking about sth difficult or unpleasant.
put yourself down  criticize yourself in front of other people.
slip-up  a small mistake. slip up v.
jump to conclusions  make a decision about sth too quickly, before having all the facts. SYN leap to conclusions.
pan out  INF (of events or a situation) develop in a particular way.
bury your head in the sand  refuse to admit that a problem exists, or refuse to deal with it.
face up to sth  accept and deal with sth that is difficult or unpleasant.
run through sth  pass quickly through sth. (Sth can run through your mind.)
run through sth in a good/bad light  If you see sth in a good/bad light, it seems good/bad to you.
live up to sth  do as well as other people expect you to.

3 Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1 Don’t bury your head in the sand. Face up to the problem.
2 Let’s see how the situation pans out. Let’s see how the situation develops.
3 She dwells on her mistakes. She ignores her mistakes.
4 I can’t live up to their expectations. I can’t be as good as they expect.
5 It was just a silly slip-up. It was just a silly fall.
6 He always leaps to conclusions. He always gets to the end.
7 Try not to see it in a negative way. Try not to see it in a bad light.
8 Don’t put yourself down. Don’t be so self-critical.

4 Complete the texts.

BILL I don’t know why, but I have a habit of always seeing things in a bad (1) . It’s awful at night: I keep waking up with all these negative thoughts (2) with work. At last weeks meeting, for example, I (3) but I spent the rest of the meeting (4) on it, so I didn’t really contribute anything at all. I think my boss (5) up with some sales figures – only a tiny mistake, has very high expectations of me, and I just can’t (5) up to them.

MONICA I saw Derek with that blonde girl again today. Maybe I’m just (6) to conclusions, but he seems really keen on her. I guess I’ll just have to (7) up to the fact I’m not his special one – let’s face it, I’m no great beauty. Delta says I’m always (8) myself down and that’s why Derek isn’t interested. She says I should cheer up, and just see how things pan (9) . Easier said than done.

5 ABOUT YOU What advice would you give Bill and Monica in Exercise 4? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student. Use language from the glossary.
47 I can talk about decision-making

A Decision-making styles

People make decisions in different ways. Some weigh up their options carefully, which is sensible as long as you don’t lose sight of what’s important. Others, rightly or wrongly, just follow their gut feeling. A surprising number go for the first available option and rush into a decision, regardless of its importance. People who don’t trust their own judgement may turn to others, or go with the majority view, while those who have a mind of their own may not consult anyone at all. Then, of course, there are people who either lack the courage of their convictions, or worry so much about making the ‘wrong’ decision, that they can’t make any decision.

Glossary

weigh sth up consider the good and bad aspects of sth before reaching a decision about it.
lose sight of sth stop considering sth; forget about sth.
rightly or wrongly used to say that sth is true, whether people think it is a good thing or bad thing.
gut feeling/reaction/instinct INF a feeling that sth is right, even if you cannot explain why.
rush into sth do sth quickly without thinking about it first (also rush headlong into sth).
turn to sb/sth go to sb/sth for help and advice.
go with sth accept or agree to a decision, a plan, or an offer.
have a mind of your own have your own opinions and make your own decisions without being influenced by others.

have/lack the courage of your convictions be / not be brave enough to do what you feel is right.

I always go for fish in a restaurant. INF = choose fish (‘choose sth’ as above).
The painting went for £100. = was sold for £100.
There were three people going for the job. INF = trying to get the job.

1 Write ‘yes’ or ‘no’:

1 If you say something is true rightly or wrongly, is it true?
2 If you are weighing something up, have you already made a decision?
3 If something went for a large amount, has it been stolen?
4 If you lack the courage of your convictions, are you able to do what you feel is right?
5 If you have a mind of your own, are you easily influenced by other people?
6 If you lose sight of something, have you stopped thinking about it?

2 Complete the sentences.

1 When you have to make a decision, do you usually weigh up carefully, or are you in the habit of headlong into a decision without giving it much thought?
2 Do you think you often take for the easiest option when making a decision?
3 Do you base a lot of your decisions on your own gut feeling or instinct?
4 Who do usually go to when you need advice?
5 If you asked five people for their opinion before making a decision, would you usually with the consensus?
6 If you think something is the right thing to do, do you usually have the courage?

3 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 2 in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B Individual decisions

I once saw a boy steal some chocolate from a shop, and I turned a blind eye. Now I draw the line at any kind of stealing. If it happened again, I would step in and do something.

Yesterday it was a toss-up between a noisy crowded train journey, or driving for two hours on a boring motorway. I chose the train as the lesser of two evils.

I was in two minds about a holiday. I normally go away, but I really needed the money for some new furniture. In the end I decided to give the holiday a miss.

I put up with the fact that my girlfriend was a bit unreliable, but when she arrived an hour late for dinner on my birthday, that was the final straw. I finished with her.

Glossary

turn a blind eye (to sth) pretend not to see or notice sth, usually sth bad.
step in become involved in a difficult situation to help or make it stop.
be a toss-up INF used for saying that you do not know which of two things to choose, or which of two things will happen. toss up v.
the lesser of two evils the less unpleasant of two unpleasant choices.
be in two minds (about sth / doing sth) be unable to decide (about sth / doing sth).
give sth a miss INF decide not to do sth that you usually do.
put up with sth/sb accept sth/sb unpleasant in a patient way.
the final/last straw the last in a series of bad actions or events that makes it impossible for you to accept a situation any longer.

spotlight Idioms with draw

If you draw the line (at sth), you set a limit on what you will allow or accept. If you draw a line under sth, you decide that something is finished and you stop thinking about it. If you draw lots, you make a decision by writing the choices on pieces of paper, putting these into a container, and selecting one at random.

4 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1 I decided to give it a straw.
2 She turned a blind eye.
3 We decided to draw the line.
4 It was the final straw.
5 I decided to draw a line.
6 It was the lesser of two evils.

5 Complete the sentences.

1 If I had a cold, I would probably miss my English class.
2 If I saw someone dropping litter, I would probably turn a blind eye to it.
3 If I saw a mother hitting a child, I would step in and say something.
4 I couldn't put up with a boyfriend/girlfriend/partner who smoked.
5 If it was a toss-up between going for a walk and having a swim, I'd go for a walk.
6 When I'm in two minds about buying something, I usually don't buy it.
7 If it's a choice between cleaning or ironing, I'd say ironing is the lesser of two evils.
8 I agree that people can protest, but I would step in at any form of violent protest.

6 ABOUT YOU Would you make the same decisions as the speakers at the top of the page and in Exercise 5? Why / why not? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
A What kind of risks do you take?

Are you one of life's gamblers? Yes / No / Not sure

I never put money on a horse, a race, or anything like that.

If I was investing money, I'd probably hedge my bets and split it up.

There's no excuse for taking risks when you're driving.

I'm always prepared to stick my neck out if someone asks my opinion.

When people threaten to do things, I rarely call their bluff.

I'm not the kind of person to get myself into difficult situations.

In life, I think I tend to play it safe most of the time.

Would I risk my neck to save someone else? That's a difficult one.

Glossary

put money on sth bet money on a horse, team, etc. in a race or game.
hedge your bets reduce the risk of losing by choosing several possibilities instead of just one.
split sth up divide sth into smaller parts.
there's no excuse for (doing) sth = there's no acceptable reason for doing sth (used in reference to behaviour which you think is very bad).
stick your neck out INF take a risk by doing or saying sth that may be criticized or proved to be wrong.
call sb's bluff tell sb to do what they are threatening to do because you don't believe they intend to do it or are brave enough to do it.
get yourself into sth become involved in a difficult situation, often without intending to.
play (it) safe avoid taking any big risks.
risk your neck risk being killed or injured in order to do sth. SYN risk life and limb.

1 Match the verbs on the left with the endings on the right.

1 stick
2 risk
3 call
4 split
5 hedge
6 play

a someone's bluff
b your bets
c it safe
d your neck
e your neck out
f something up

2 Complete the sentences.

1 Most people would say nothing in that situation, but my brother is always prepared to his neck and say what he thinks.

2 I'm always very careful not to myself debt. To be honest, there's for people spending money they haven't actually got.

3 I wanted a photo of the shark, but I wouldn't risk and trying to get it.

4 He threatened me saying he had a gun, but I called his and he had nothing.

5 I wasn't sure who would win, so I my bets and money on two of them.

6 If you have money to invest, accountants often advise you to it safe and the money up into different investments such as shares, property, and a pension.

3 ABOUT YOU How would you respond to the statements at the top of the page? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B Risk-takers

Why do people take risks?

Recent research sheds some light on this and suggests it may be down to the psychological make-up of a person. It seems that 60 per cent of risk-takers are ‘sensation seekers’: people who seek out and thrive on novel and exciting experiences. This does not necessarily involve risk, but it is a common by-product. Sensation-seekers are more at risk from drink or drugs, and more likely to take a chance on a long shot; they are less likely to err on the side of caution. However, not all risk-taking is bad. Mankind has only evolved by taking risks; without it we would stagnate.

Glossary

- shed/cast/throw light on sth: help to explain sth by providing new information about it.
- be down to sb/sth: be caused by a particular person or thing.
- make-up: the different qualities or things that combine together to form sth. make sth up v: try to find sth/sb.
- seek out sth/sb: enjoy sth so much that it makes you a happier or healthier person.
- strive on sth: used to say that sth is possibly true but not definitely true.
- not necessarily: decide to do sth knowing it may be the wrong choice.
- take a chance (on sth): an attempt that is unlikely to succeed, but may be worth trying.
- a long shot: be prepared to miss an opportunity rather than take a risk.
- err on the side of caution: If you are at risk from/of sth, you are in danger of something unpleasant or harmful happening.
- If you run the risk of sth, you put yourself in a situation in which something bad could happen.
- If you do sth at your own risk, you do it even though you have been warned of the dangers.

4 Replace the word(s) in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning. The first letter has been given to help you.

1. She loves work.
2. It’s composed of four parts.
3. The mistake was caused by Jim.
4. Does he actively look for adventure?
5. I would be careful rather than take a risk.
6. Can you help by explaining any of this?
7. It’s unlikely to succeed but we can try it.
8. Is it a big problem? ~ It could be, but that’s not certain.

5 Complete the sentences.

1. Do you think you out novel and exciting experiences?
2. Do you on new challenges or do you prefer familiar things?
3. Is being a ‘sensation seeker’ part of your psychological a chance on a shot?
4. Would you normally from anything dangerous in your daily life?
5. Are you at the risk of losing a lot of money in order to win a lot?
6. Would you

6 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 5 in your notebook, with your reasons, or talk to another student.
Review: Human behaviour

Unit 40

1 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences. Write it in.

1 a The information was hushed ____________ to protect the doctor.
   b She tried to cover it ____________, but we found out.
   2 a You nearly scared me ____________ death!
   b It's hard to face up ____________ the truth.
   3 a It was clearly untrue about the money, but I didn't let ____________ that I knew.
   b I told a lie, but I don't want to have that ____________ my conscience.
   4 a She couldn't gloss ____________ the truth any longer.
   b You can't pull the wool ____________ my eyes!
   5 a The government announcement was an attempt to save ____________.
   b Neither side is prepared to lose ____________ in the dispute.
   6 a When it ____________ to looking after children, she's brilliant.
   b We'll have to hope this information never ____________ to light.

2 Complete the dialogues.

1 Why didn't you tell her the truth? ~ It was wrong not to, but I wanted to ____________ her feelings.
2 Did he know his father was in prison? ~ No, his mother ____________ it from him for years.
3 It's always difficult to give bad news. ~ Yes, it's tempting just to ____________ over the truth.
4 Don't mention the surprise party to Alice. ~ No, we mustn't give the ____________ away.
5 Why did she scream? ~ Well, you scared the living ____________ out of her!
6 Do you feel responsible for the job losses? ~ Of course I do; it's very hard to ____________ with.

Unit 41

1 Complete the definitions.

1 If something is a close shave, you manage to ________ a dangerous situation.
2 If you slip up, you make a ________.
3 If you are forging ahead, you are making ________ quickly.
4 If you play it safe, you don't take ________.
5 If you pull something off, you ________ in doing something.
6 If something tips the balance in your favour, it gives you a slight ________ over somebody.
7 If the result is in the balance, it is not yet ________.
8 If you look back on something, you think about a ________.
9 If you are neck and neck with someone, you are ________ with them.
10 If you are gaining ground on someone, you are ________ with them.
11 If you give something your all, you ________ as much as possible.
12 If a game or race starts hotting up, it becomes more ________.
Unit 45

1 One word is wrong in each sentence. Find the mistake and correct it.
   1 I don't know why he's so aggressive; he's got a real fish on his shoulder.
   2 This problem could get worse, so we'd better take the cow by the horns.
   3 I'm afraid he's not going to compromise now; he's digging his toes in.
   4 She's very bright, so I'm sure she'll fly through this exam.
   5 He's getting very worked up about it, but it's just a storm in a saucer.
   6 He won't change his mind easily; you'll have your job cut out to persuade him.
   7 They've stepped into the trap of thinking it would be easy.
   8 If we just sit loose, this problem might blow over.

2 Replace the words in italics with an idiom or phrasal verb, using the words in the box in the correct form. Keep a similar meaning.

   She's stubborn; I think she'll refuse to change her mind. dig her heels in
   1 He made a decision but then didn't do anything about it.
   2 It was a big disappointment and she still hasn't recovered from it.
   3 You've got to control your feelings and act more calmly.
   4 It's not the worst thing that could happen.
   5 She'll pass the exam easily.
   6 He hasn't felt like eating for a few days.
   7 I'm sure the subject was discussed at the meeting.
   8 We've got to deal with this problem.

Unit 46

1 Is the speaker feeling positive, or being critical of herself? Write P or C.
   1 I get carried away.       6 I faced up to it.
   2 I dwell on things.       7 I put myself down.
   3 I took to it like a duck to water. 8 I was in my element.
   4 I buried my head in the sand. 9 I couldn't live up to it.
   5 I threw myself into it.    10 Luck's always on my side.

2 Complete each sentence in two different ways, starting with the words given.

   1 He doesn't let these things worry him because she
      { life's too
      life goes       .

   2 She doesn't think about things carefully enough. She jumps to
      { She gets carried
      She

   3 Once he's got an idea, there's no
      { he throws

   4 When she has a problem, she buries
      { she faces

   .
Unit 47

1 Complete the texts. You will find one of the words for each idiom or phrasal verb in the box.

rash  step  minds  rightly  courage  draw  turn  sight  straw  put ✓  weigh  toss

Some decisions I’ve had to make in the last year:

- I couldn’t put up with the flat I was living in any longer – it was really horrible, but I had to (1) job at the same time. I was in (2) day, the flat was broken into and my laptop was stolen. That was the (3) , so that same day, I went and found a new place to rent.

- There was this problem with my job, as I said. I’d been working all hours of the day and night, admittedly for a lot of money, but I’d completely (4) happiness. (5) wrongly, I (6) a decision and got a job providing support for elderly people in their homes. I’d always wanted to do something for the community, and you have to have the (7) . I don’t regret it at all.

- In the summer, my brother was in trouble over some small debts, and eventually he (8) me for help. I worried about it for days; it was a (9) as to whether I should get Dad to (10) and sort him out financially, but in the end, I lent him the money myself. Hopefully he’ll be able to (11) and keep better track of his finances in future.

Unit 48

1 Read the definitions and complete the idioms and phrasal verbs.

- something that probably won’t succeed, but is worth trying: a long shot
- make a problem easier to understand: a long shot
- decide to do something, knowing that it might be the wrong thing to do: take a shot on sth
- not take any risks at all: take a shot on sth
- ask someone to do what they are threatening to do, because you believe they don’t intend to do it: call sb’s shot
- become involved in a tricky situation without intending to do so: get yourself shot sth
- do something very dangerous, especially something that might injure or kill you: risk your shot
- bet on a horse, race, etc: money on sth
- be caused by a particular person or thing: be to sb/sth

2 Write in the missing prepositions or adverbs.

1 My brother’s a real risk-taker: he thrives dangerous sports like hang-gliding.
2 Personally I’m a very cautious person, and I always err on the side of caution.
3 Parking is allowed here, but purely the customer’s own risk.
4 I’m sticking my neck here, but I think Barton will win the next election.
5 Millions of people around the world will risk from extreme weather in the future.
6 My sister is not the kind of person to seek adventure; on the contrary.
7 The conference aims to throw light how to manage financial risk.
8 The advisory committee is made of experts in risk management.
49 I can use informal spoken idioms

A A range of opinions

The majority of idioms range from neutral to informal. The examples here are all informal, and used mostly in spoken English.

A What did you make of the new soap opera?

B I was glued to it.

C Mmm. Nothing to get excited about.

D Didn’t see it. It’s not my idea of fun.

B Far from it.

A Was he upset by the criticism?

D Oh, I think he felt a bit hard done by.

C It’s water off a duck’s back to him.

D Maybe, but it’ll take some doing.

A Do you think we’ll win?

C I think we’re in with a chance.

B Yeah, it’s in the bag.

Glossary

be glued to sth
nothing to get excited about

not be your idea of fun
be in the bag
be in with a chance (of doing sth)
take some doing
far from it

(like) water off a duck’s back
feel/be hard done by

be paying all your attention to sth. syn nothing to write home about.
sth that is not particularly good or interesting.
not be sth that you enjoy, though others might enjoy it.
If sth is in the bag, you are sure to get it or achieve it.
have the possibility of succeeding or achieving sth.
be difficult to do, or involve a lot of effort or time.
used to say that the opposite of what sb says is true. syn quite the opposite/reverse.
used to say that sth, especially criticism, has no effect on sb.
feel/be unfairly treated.

1 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 Moira felt a bit hard done by / for when her boss criticized her.
2 Was Harry unhappy about the exam paper? ~ Far from it. | Quite the opposite.
3 I was glued / stuck to that programme about elephants last night.
4 Are you sure you’ll get that contract? ~ Yeah, it’s in the packet / bag.
5 What did you think of the book? ~ Nothing to write home about | get excited about.
6 You can say what you like to him. ~ Yeah, it’s like water off a duck’s beak / back.

2 Respond to the questions using idioms from above, and using the information in brackets to guide you.

Did you watch the programme? ~ Yes, I was glued to it. (yes, I was fascinated by it)

1 Do you fancy going to the opera? ~ (not the sort of thing you like)
2 Were you disappointed with the result? ~ (not at all)
3 Do you think he’ll win? ~ (he has a possibility of winning)
4 What did you think of the film? ~ (not very good at all)
5 Were you upset? ~ (yes, I was unfairly treated)
6 Do you think you’ll succeed? ~ (it’ll require a lot of effort)
7 Were you upset by the criticism? ~ (you’re not affected by it)
8 Will she get the job? ~ (yes, it’s a certainty)
B Say it another way

Idioms often give you an opportunity to say something in a slightly different way.

- Do you fancy a coffee? 
  - What time are you going? ... Danny?
  - I wouldn't say no.
  - I'm sorry, I was miles away.

- We'd better make a move or we'll be pushed to get there on time.
- I asked him if he could help with the arrangements but he didn't want to know.
- I can't see what else to do, so let's leave it at that.
- You won some money last time, but I wouldn't push your luck.
- Dad was none too pleased about me borrowing the car.
- When we go to the gym, Michael just does his own thing.

Glossary

- I wouldn't say no = yes, please.
- be miles away = be thinking about sth else.
- make a move = leave a place.
- be (hard) pushed to do sth = have (a lot of) difficulty in doing sth.
- not want to know = refuse to listen or get involved.
- leave it at that = do or say nothing more.
- push your luck = take more risks than are sensible.
- none/not too pleased = annoyed.

**spotlight** thing(s)

*Thing(s) occurs in many idioms, e.g.:
*He likes to do his own thing.* = likes to do what he wants or what interests him.
*You must be seeing things.* = must be imagining you can see things that aren't there (also be hearing things).

3 Find a mistake in each sentence. Cross out any unnecessary words, or write the correct words at the end.

- If they offered me a free flight, I wouldn't say not. ☐
- I think we'll be hardly pushed to get home by seven o'clock.
- I asked her if we could wait in here, but she didn't want to know it.
- We'd better make a move on, or we'll miss our train.
- Let's give him one more try, then leave it at this.
- He was very helpful last time, but you shouldn't push the luck.
- There's no one at the door; you must hear things.

4 Replace the part of the response in italics with an idiom that keeps a similar meaning.

- Is she going to open another shop? ~ Maybe, but she's taking a big risk. pushing her luck
  - What did Pat say? ~ Er ... I'm sorry, I was thinking about something else.
  - Is that a deer outside the window? ~ You must be imagining it.
  - Shall we try talking to her again? ~ No, let's say nothing more.
  - Would you like a coffee? ~ Hmm, that would be nice.
  - Do you want another cup of tea? ~ No, I'd better go.
  - Does he do the same as the rest? ~ No, he just does what interests him.
  - How did she react when you told her? ~ She was annoyed.
  - Can you finish it today? ~ I think that will be difficult.
A Making positive noises

In the responses below, the main stress falls on the underlined syllable.

I've brought my umbrella. **Just as well.**

Do you mind me coming this early? **No, not in the least.**

Shall we go? **Yeah, ready when you are.**

How's the course going? **So far, so good.**

We could take the train. **That's an idea.**

Is it a difficult game? **No, there's nothing to it.**

Sorry, I didn't give you the money for my sandwich. **It's OK. Forget it.**

It's a public holiday, so everything will be closed. **Mmm. that figures.**

Has the scheme been a success? **Yes, very much so.**

I've got Friday off. **Lucky you.**

Glossary

(it's/that's) **just as well**
not in the least
ready when you are
so far, so good
that's an idea
there's nothing to it
forget it
that figures
very much so
lucky you

it is lucky that sth has or hasn't happened, otherwise there would be problems.
used to emphasize the answer 'no.' SYN not at all.
INF used to tell sb that you are ready to do sth with them whenever they are ready.
INF used to say things have been successful up to now.
INF used to reply in a positive way to a suggestion.
INF = it's very easy.
INF used to tell sb not to worry about sth.
used to say that sth seems logical and reasonable.
INF used to emphasize your agreement or approval.
INF used to say you think sb is lucky to have or do sth.

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 You must be happy in the new place. a Ready when you are.
2 Will I be able to do it? b That's just as well.
3 I think we should go. c That's an idea.
4 Was he worried about it? d So far, so good.
5 We could buy him a watch. e Yes, very much so.
6 I took the laptop out of the car. f No, not in the least.
7 Can I pay you for the tickets? g Yeah, there's nothing to it.
8 How's your French class going? h No, forget it.

2 Complete the dialogues with a suitable idiom.

1 I'm going to spend a week in the south of France. ~ Wow, a
2 Do you mind if we work in the library? ~ No, b
3 If she's coming by bus, she won't be here until six. ~ Yeah, c
4 Are you getting on OK? ~ Yeah, d
5 How much do I owe you for the meal? ~ It's OK, e
6 I'm not sure if I'll be able to use this new software. ~ Don't worry, f
7 I'll be away for a couple of days, so I've locked the windows. ~ Yeah, g
B Negative or angry responses

Are you coming for an early morning swim? ~ **No fear.**

I don’t want to go out with you this evening. ~ **Please yourself.**

Can I have this chocolate? ~ **Don’t you dare!**

Michael never thanks people for things. ~ **That’s a load of rubbish!**

I’m going to the dentist this afternoon. ~ Ooh, **rather you than me.**

I want to get tickets for that concert. ~ **You’ll be lucky.**

You’ve eaten all the biscuits! ~ **So what?**

Marianne? ~ Oh, **now what?**

Val says she’ll be late. ~ **That’s not my problem.**

---

**Glossary**

- **no fear** INF used to say that you definitely do not want to do sth. SYN **no way.**
- **please yourself** INF used to tell sb you are annoyed and do not care what they do.
- **don’t you dare** INF used to tell sb strongly not to do sth.
- **that’s/what a load of rubbish/nonsense** INF, IMPOLITE used to say that you think sth is untrue or stupid.
- **rather you/him, etc. than me** INF used to say that you would not like to do sth that sb else is going to do.
- **you’ll be lucky** INF used to tell sb that what they want probably will not happen.
- **so what?** INF used to say you think sth is not important, especially after sb has criticized you for it. SYN **what of it?**
- **now what?** INF used when you are annoyed because sb is always asking you questions or interrupting you. SYN **what is it now?**
- **that’s not my problem** INF = I don’t care about sth that is sb else’s problem (also **that’s his/her, etc. problem** = they must solve their own problems.)

---

3 Circle the correct answer(s). Both answers may be correct.

1 You’ve put on weight. ~ **So what?** | **Now what?**
2 I don’t want to go. I’d rather stay here. ~ **That’s not my problem.** | **Please yourself.**
3 I’m going to tell Dan you went out with Tony. ~ **No fear.** | **Don’t you dare!**
4 I’ve got too many things to do. ~ **That’s your problem.** | **That’s not my problem.**
5 Minus 10 degrees and I’ll be sleeping in a tent tonight! ~ **You’ll be lucky.** | **Rather you than me.**
6 Your English pronunciation sounds funny. ~ **What of it?** | **So what?**

---

4 Read what people say to Sam. Write Sam’s responses. (Sam is lazy and in a bad temper.)

- I don’t think I’ll come to the concert tonight. ~ Sam: ‘**Please yourself**’
  1 I’m going to pass all my English exams. ~ Sam: ‘
  2 Are you going on that ten kilometre walk? ~ Sam: ‘
  3 Can I finish your drink? ~ Sam: ‘
  4 Your girlfriend’s a lot younger than you. ~ Sam: ‘
  5 I always forget to set my alarm clock and then I oversleep. ~ Sam: ‘
  6 I’m going to attend extra English classes. ~ Sam: ‘
  7 Sam! Sam! Come over here! ~ Sam: ‘
  8 Everyone says you have a very bad temper. ~ Sam: ‘
  9
Formal spoken English

Some idioms are commonly heard in more formal spoken contexts such as parliamentary debates, television and radio broadcasts, ceremonies, lectures, and so on.

**With all due respect to** the Prime Minister, it is the people of this country who have, **in large part**, suffered **at the hands of** his government, and I am sure they will want to **take issue with** his last remark.

Thousands of people gathered to **pay their respects to** the many local servicemen who **laid down their lives for** their country.

Terrorists still **hold sway** in many of the rural areas and **therein lies** the problem. They have already **laid waste to** much valuable farmland, and we could be facing yet another drought. Any hopes that this awful situation might **be at an end** look premature.

James Maplin’s groundbreaking research not only **gave rise to** his highly esteemed books and **set the seal on** a glittering academic career, it also put us **on the threshold of** a major breakthrough in the treatment of Parkinson’s Disease. I now **have the honour of** introducing Professor Maplin …

I would like to **pay tribute to** the young police officer who, **paying no heed to** his own safety, went to the help of our daughter and saved her from certain death. It was an act of considerable bravery, **beyond the call of duty**, and we will forever **be in his debt**.

**Glossary**

- with (all due) respect (to sb)
- in large part
- at the hands of sb
- take issue with sth/sb (over/about sth)
- pay your respects (to sb)
- lay down your life (for sb/sth)
- hold sway
- therein lies sth
- lay waste to sth
- be at an end
- give rise to sth
- set the seal on sth
- on the threshold of sth
- have the honour of doing sth
- pay tribute to sb
- pay heed to sb/sth
- beyond the call of duty
- be in sb’s debt

**Used as a polite formula when you are going to disagree with sb.**

to a great extent. **SYN in large measure.**
because of sb’s actions (**they suffered/died at his hands**). **Start disagreeing or arguing with sb about sth.**
show your respect for sb by visiting them, going to their funeral, attending a memorial service, etc.
die in order to protect or save sb/sth.
have power or influence over a group of people or a region.
used to indicate the result or consequence of a situation or an action. completely destroy a place or area.
If sth **is at an end**, it has finished.
cause sth to happen or exist.
make sth definite or complete.
at the beginning of sth.
be given the opportunity of doing sth that makes you feel proud.
say or do sth to show your respect and admiration for sb.
give careful attention to sb/sth (**pay no heed to sb/sth** give no attention to sb/sth).
(of an action) performed with greater courage or effort than is usual or expected.
feel grateful to sb for their help, kindness, etc. (also **be in debt to sb**).
1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 have  a rise to something
2 pay  b the seal on something
3 take  c waste to something
4 give  d the honour of doing something
5 hold  e tribute to somebody
6 set  f issue with somebody
7 lay down  g sway
8 lay  h your life for something

2 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences. What is it?

1 a Many have suffered the hands of the militia.
   b The fighting could be an end.
2 a The two young men came and their respects to their father.
   b Carl no heed to the warnings he had received.
3 a Thousands down their lives.
   b The army waste to large parts of the territory.
4 a I would like to take issue your comments about local residents.
   b I would respect, sir, I don’t believe your suggestion will be acceptable.
5 a We were very much their debt for their help in winning the election.
   b Humans are large part responsible for the global warming crisis.

3 Which word is missing in each definition?

1 If you lay waste to something, you
2 If you are on the threshold of something, you are at the
3 We use with all due respect when we are going with someone.
4 If something gives rise to something, it causes it to
5 If you take issue with somebody, you
6 If you have the honour of doing something, you have the opportunity to do something which makes you feel

4 Replace the words in italics with a more formal idiom that has a similar meaning.

She showed her admiration for him in her farewell speech. paid tribute to
1 We could be at the beginning of a new era.
2 Many people have suffered because of the rebels.
3 The army still has power over much of the country.
4 Dr Ellis took no notice of the calls for his resignation.
5 The disease spread to a great extent because of poverty.
6 So many soldiers died in the two world wars.
7 I will always feel grateful to him.
8 They damaged or destroyed large areas of the town.
9 That is where I disagree with the council leader.
10 The fireman’s bravery was more than we should expect of anyone.

5 Complete the texts.

With all due (1), this is where I take (2) of this government has not taken any decisive action, and therein (3) government’s failure to control lending which gave (4) Prime Minister calmly tells us that our problems could be at an (5) with the Prime Minister because the problem. It was the to this crisis in the first place, and now the . What nonsense!
The brigade gathered to pay their (6) to the officer who (7) down his life in order to save the lives of others. One soldier who survived as a result of the officer’s gallantry paid this special (8) to Corporal Ben Williams. ‘I had the (9) Williams, and for those of us who are here today, in large (10) salute you.’
A Reporting a court case

Idioms commonly found in a legal context tend to be more formal.

RADIO REPORT Mr Ryan, of no fixed abode, appeared before magistrates having been charged with breach of the peace. Under oath, Mr Ryan denied that he had been causing a disturbance or that he had attempted to attack …

WITNESS STATEMENT On the day in question I encountered Mr Ryan at the entrance to the supermarket. He was clearly under the influence and was being abusive, so I took the liberty of trying to move him. He did not take kindly to this, and started to punch me. However, by virtue of my size, and being sober, I was able to restrain him.

POLICE STATEMENT We are now working in conjunction with the council to reduce drinking in public places, but are not yet at liberty to say precisely what steps will …

Glossary

of no fixed abode

breach of the peace

under/on oath

in question

under the influence

take the liberty of doing sth

not take kindly to sth/sb

by virtue of sth

in conjunction with sb/sth

at liberty (to do sth)

FML = having no permanent home.

LEGAL the crime of noisy or violent behaviour in a public place.

LEGAL having made a formal promise to tell the truth in a court of law.

FML The day, man, etc. in question is the day, man, etc. being discussed (in this case the day of the alleged crime).

FML do sth without permission.

FML find it difficult to accept sth/sb because they annoy you.

FML because of sth; as a result of sth.

FML together with sb/sth.

FML having permission to do sth.

1 Paraphrase the phrases in italics in more everyday English. Look at the example first.

What does it mean, he didn’t take kindly to it? It means he was very annoyed by it.

1 What does it mean, he was of no fixed abode?

2 What did he mean by under the influence?

3 What’s meant by speaking under oath?

4 What did she mean, by virtue of her experience?

5 What’s breach of the peace?

6 What does he mean, he’s not at liberty to tell us?

2 Complete the sentences.

1 He’s been found guilty of breach of the peace.

2 If you drive while under the influence, you could get into trouble.

3 The authorities did not take kindly to my criticism.

4 The newspaper is not at liberty to publish the names before the trial.

5 If you give evidence in a court of law, remember that you are under oath.

6 The official wasn’t there, so I didn’t take the liberty of consulting the prisoner’s notes.

7 They are funding the development with the local council.

8 On the day in question, I didn’t see the two men leave the house.
B  Read the small print

Fairfax vindicated in court decision

In his summing-up, the local magistrate acknowledged that Fairfax Ltd may have violated the spirit of the law, but they had acted fully in accordance with the letter of the law. He said that although Mrs Wilson refused to pay the money demanded by Fairfax Ltd in good faith, she had entered into an agreement with the company of her own free will, and must abide by it. Sadly, it was her failure to read the small print in that agreement which had been her undoing. He therefore ruled that Fairfax Ltd had not tried to obtain money under false pretences, and were entitled to claim what rightfully belonged to them.

Glossary

summing-up  LEGAL a statement made by a judge, magistrate, or lawyer that gives a summary of the evidence in a court. sum up V.

in accordance with sth  FML in a way that follows a rule or sb's wishes.
in good faith  believing that what you are doing is right.
enter into sth  FML take part in a formal arrangement, activity, or discussion.
of your own free will  freely and willingly and not in response to force.
abide by sth  obey a rule, decision, instruction, etc.
the small print  the details of sth, often in a contract, that are written in small letters and may include conditions that limit your rights.
be sb’s undoing  be the cause of sb's failure.
under false pretences  If you do or get sth under false pretences, you do or get it by tricking or deceiving people.

spotlight The law

The spirit of the law is the real meaning or intention of a law, even if the way it is written does not express this. The letter of the law is the exact words that are used in a law rather than its general meaning.

3  Complete the sentences.

1  He followed the letter of the law, but I believe it was against the of the law.
2  If you into an agreement with someone, you have to by it.
3  When you are signing a contract, it is very important to read the print.
4  The burglar left fingerprints at the scene of the crime; that was his.
5  Mary had no idea the document was a forgery; she signed it in good .
6  He can't complain; he went there of his own free.
7  The judge will the evidence tomorrow in court.
8  It is claimed the man obtained the money under false.

4  Paraphrase the sentences on the left using more formal or legal language. Start with the words given.

- It was the reason why he failed.
  - It was his undoing.
- He wanted to do it; no one made him.
  - He did it of .
- She did exactly what the law says.
  - She followed the .
- He got the money by tricking her.
  - He got the money under .
- He did exactly what Mrs Hart wished.
  - He acted in .
- The judge explained when going over the evidence.
  - The judge explained in his .
- Miles did it because he thought it was right.
  - Miles did it in .
- I wish I hadn't taken part in the discussion.
  - I wish I hadn't .
- They promised to obey the rules.
  - They promised to .
The majority of phrasal verbs are either neutral or informal in style. A small number of prepositional verbs, however, range from neutral to formal, and are used more commonly in written English or more formal spoken English. In most cases, this is because the base verb is more formal, e.g. allude, engage, etc.

If multinational companies *adhere to* the European Court’s decision, they may have to *dispose of* assets which will *deprive* them of significant sources of income.

Britain is having to *contend with* an ageing population, the implications of which could *impinge upon* almost all of us in one way or another over the next 20 to 30 years.

In the past the company *prided itself on* being a major employer in the area, but last week it reluctantly agreed to *dispense with the services of* three of its regional managers.

Banks are *resigning themselves to* the fact that they will *be subjected to* much closer scrutiny if the government *embarks upon* its plan of tighter financial regulation.

Jonathan Brannon’s solicitor *alluded to* the fact that he and his ex-wife were still *engaged in* a dispute over the ownership of their former home.

A spokesperson said he did not *subscribe to* the view that the club’s action *had amounted to* unfair dismissal.

### Glossary

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adhere to sth</td>
<td>obey a law, rule, agreement, etc. SYN <em>abide by sth.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dispose of sth/sb</td>
<td>get rid of sth that you no longer want or cannot keep.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deprive sb of sth</td>
<td>prevent sb from having, using, or doing sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contend with sth</td>
<td>have to deal with a problem or difficult situation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impinge on/upon sb/sth</td>
<td>have an effect on sb/sth, usually in a negative way. SYN <em>impact on sb/sth.</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pride yourself on sth</td>
<td>be proud of sth / doing sth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on doing sth</td>
<td>stop employing sb or dismiss sb from their job.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dispense with sb’s services</td>
<td>accept sth unpleasant that cannot be changed or avoided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>resign yourself to sth</td>
<td>(often passive) make sb suffer or experience sth unpleasant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subject sb to sth</td>
<td>start to do sth new or difficult.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>embark on/upon sth</td>
<td>refer to sth indirectly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>allude to sth</td>
<td>take part in sth; be involved in sth (also <em>engage in sth</em>).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be engaged in sth</td>
<td>agree with an idea, opinion, or theory.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscribe to sth</td>
<td>be the same as or equal to something else.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amount to sth</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**spotlight verb + on/upon**

The choice between *on* and *upon*, e.g. *embark on/upon*, is often one of style: *upon* is generally more formal than *on*. Other examples include:

- *She wouldn’t enlarge on/upon her remarks.* = say more about them.
- *He called on/upon the government for more support.* = asked the government.
- *They didn’t wish to dwell on/upon the consequences.* = spend time thinking about something difficult or unpleasant.
1 Choose the most suitable ending (a–h) for each of the sentence beginnings (1–8).

1. They have dispensed with a food and water.
2. You must abide by b a number of problems.
3. I don’t subscribe to c nuclear waste.
4. They were deprived of d her services.
5. She’s about to embark on e the terms of the contract.
6. There are risks in disposing of f other countries for assistance.
7. We had to contend with g that theory.
8. They have called on h a new career.

2 A preposition is missing in each sentence. Where does it go? Write it at the end.

- The suggested changes will not impinge greatly on people’s lives.
1. I don’t subscribe that point of view at all.
2. When are they aiming to embark on the new project?
3. They were deprived even the most basic essentials.
4. We had to contend sub-zero temperatures.
5. My mother prides herself on her cooking.
6. Even without interest, the repayments amount a large sum of money.
7. Are they still engaged discussions?
8. After the death of her husband, Martha resigned herself to a lonely existence.

3 Complete the sentences with verbs from the box in the correct form.

- subject resign deprive dispose amount impinge adhere engage

1. If you put the plants in that corner, they will be subject to a lot of light.
2. Investors have deprived themselves to the fact that profits have fallen in value.
3. When the animal dies, the vet will be engaged in the body.
4. Many of the prisoners were engaged in torture.
5. I’ve been engaged in a lengthy dispute with the tax office.
6. Whether he resigned or was sacked, it will be to the same thing.
7. Any cuts in this department will be engaged upon the rest of the organization.
8. Competitors must agree to the rules, otherwise they will be disqualified.

4 Replace the parts of the sentences in italics with a more formal prepositional verb that keeps a similar meaning.

- The people have had to do without basic human rights. been deprived of
1. I asked her to say a bit more about her theory.
2. I have never held the view that punishment is an effective deterrent.
3. The court has called upon member states to stick with their decision.
4. We may have to deal with uncompromising attitudes on both sides.
5. The managers are going to get rid of some clerical staff.
6. Let’s not think any more about past problems.
7. His decision to resign is the same thing as an admission of failure.
8. The group are proud of their attention to detail.

5 Rewrite the sentences on the left using a more formal prepositional verb.

- Let’s not think about this any more. Let’s not dwell on this.
1. We no longer need these old files. We can dispose of.
2. It won’t have an effect on my decision. It won’t affect.
3. He had to go through a tough interview. He was subjected to.
4. She’s proud of her loyalty. She adheres to.
5. Will they do what is stated in the rules? Will they comply with?
6. She mentioned your comments indirectly. She referred to.
Situations Vacant

| This area is strictly out of bounds |

Lyncombe Road, 3-bed house. UNDER OFFER

The policyholder must notify us in the event of any change in occupancy. Upon receipt of this notice we reserve the right to amend the terms and conditions of this insurance.

Students will only receive a discount on production of a valid ID card.

There is no service charge and tipping is at your discretion.

We look forward to hearing from you at your earliest convenience.

To whom it may concern
I have known Margaret Bond for over ten years, and in that time she ...

Glossary

for sale
situations vacant
out of bounds
under offer
in the event of sth
reserve the right to do sth
on production of sth
at sb's discretion
at your earliest convenience
To whom it may concern
keep your distance

available for sb to buy; o.n.o./ono = or nearest offer.
the title of a section in a newspaper where jobs are advertised.
If a place is out of bounds, you are not allowed to go there.
If a house is under offer, sb has agreed to buy it.
= if sth happens.
= make use of a formal right to do sth if necessary.
when you show sth.
according to what sb decides or wishes to do.
FML = at the earliest suitable time for you.
FML used at the beginning of a notice or document (e.g. a personal reference)
when it is not addressed to a particular person.
make sure you are not too near sb/sth.

1 Complete the sentences.

1 Please notify your local authority in the of any change in your circumstances.
2 The management reserves the to refuse admission.
3 Passengers will only be allowed on the platform on of a valid ticket.
4 You can't go in there. The sign clearly says 'out of '.
5 sale: 2008 Ford Mondeo, in excellent condition. £4,000 ono.
6 We look forward to hearing from you at your earliest .
7 I believe the apartment for sale is now offer.
8 Bail is granted at the of the court.

2 Cover the glossary and answer the questions.

1 What does ‘o.n.o.’ mean?
2 What might be ‘under offer’, and what does it mean?
3 What kind of thing would you find under ‘situations vacant’?
4 What would you find written under ‘to whom it may concern’?
5 What might be ‘at your discretion’ in a café or restaurant?
6 Where would you see a ‘keep your distance’ sign?
Unit 49

1. Complete the answers to the questions below using idioms from the table. You can move horizontally or vertically, backwards or forwards.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>I</th>
<th>WAS</th>
<th>MILES</th>
<th>THING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>WOULDN'T</td>
<td>SAY</td>
<td>NO</td>
<td>AWAY</td>
<td>OWN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT'S</td>
<td>IN</td>
<td>HE'S</td>
<td>DO</td>
<td>HER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONE</td>
<td>THE</td>
<td>GLUED</td>
<td>LEAVE</td>
<td>IT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TOO</td>
<td>BAG</td>
<td>TO</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>AT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLEASED</td>
<td>FAR</td>
<td>FROM</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>THAT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Would she like to come on a walk? ~ No, she'd rather do her own thing.
- Is he enjoying the film? ~ Yes.
- Would you like a sandwich or something? ~ Hmm.
- What happened when she saw the mess? ~ Well, she was.
- Are you sure you've got the job? ~ Yeah.
- I think that's the best we can do. ~ Fine, let's.
- So, what do you think we should do? ~ Pardon? Oh, sorry.
- Did she accept that she was wrong? ~ No.

2. Match the opposites.

- He's decided to stay here. OPP 
- He said it was really exciting. OPP
- He loves doing it. OPP
- He's unlikely to succeed. OPP
- He won't take risks. OPP
- He'll find it easy. OPP
- He joins in with the crowd. OPP
- He listened carefully. OPP
- a. He pushes his luck all the time.
- b. He didn't want to know.
- c. He does his own thing.
- d. He'll be hard pushed to do it.
- e. He's in with a chance.
- f. He's going to make a move. ✓
- g. He said it's nothing to write home about.
- h. It's not his idea of fun.

Unit 50

1. Tick the correct stimulus from speaker A to match the response from speaker B.

1 A. I'm going to clean out the dustbin. ☐ I'm going out for dinner. ☐  
   B. Rather you than me.
2 A. I've won some money on the lottery. ☐ I hope I win the lottery. ☐  
   B. You'll be lucky.
3 A. Are you frightened of the dark? ☐ Are you going out in the dark? ☐  
   B. No fear.
4 A. How's the new job? ☐ Is it far to the office? ☐  
   B. So far, so good.
5 A. Is the new restaurant nice? ☐ Is the climb very difficult? ☐  
   B. No, there's nothing to it.
6 A. Would you like a coffee? ☐ Is it OK if I don't come with you tonight? ☐  
   B. Please yourself.
7 A. Did you enjoy the film? ☐ What did you think of the film? ☐  
   B. Very much so.
2 Correct one mistake in each dialogue.
   1 Can I take the car tonight? ~ You don't dare!
   2 Shall we make a move? ~ Ready as you are.
   3 They say the club's going to close down. ~ What's a load of rubbish!
   4 I've bought some extra food for tonight. ~ Just so well; Maki and Lita are coming.
   5 It's after 6.00 ~ he must have gone home. ~ Yeah, this figures.
   6 I've got to tell Martin I don't want to see him again. ~ Rather you or me.

Unit 51

1 Rewrite the sentences on the left using a more formal phrase.
   ▶ The fault lies to a great extent with the boss. The fault lies in large part with the boss.
   1 We're at the beginning of a new era. We're on
   2 He didn't listen to my advice. He paid
   3 They died for their country. They laid
   4 I'm sorry but I have to disagree with you. With all
   5 The soldiers completely destroyed the town. The soldiers laid
   6 She showed a huge amount of courage. She went beyond

2 Put the words in order and add one word.
   ▶ disagree | due | you | with | all | I | with With all due respect, I disagree with you.
   1 to | our | widow | we | respects | the
   2 further | to | could | rise | problems | delays
   3 over | issue | expenses | I | took | her | the | claim
   4 died | soldiers | to | he | had | tribute | the | who
   5 meeting | honour | President | we | the | of | the
   6 government | hands | has | the | of | suffered | country | the | this

Unit 52

1 Complete the crossword. The letters in the grey squares spell out a phrase. What is it, and what does it mean?

   1 Not take to something = not want to accept a situation because it annoys you.
   2 into an agreement = take part in an official agreement.
   3 A = a statement in court, given by a judge, magistrate, or lawyer, which provides a shortened version of the evidence.
   4 Your = the thing that causes you to fail at something.
   5 Under = having made a formal promise to a court of law to tell the truth.
   6 In with someone's wishes = in a way that fulfils someone's wishes.

   7 Of no abode = having nowhere permanent to live.
   8 Under pretences = by tricking or deceiving someone.
   9 The small = the details in a document which affect your rights.
   10 Follow the of the law = interpret the law very literally and follow its precise wording.
   11 of the peace = noisy or violent behaviour in a public place.

   The phrase in the grey squares is
Unit 53

1 Put the dominoes in the correct order to make a joined sequence of idioms. Write the correct order of dominoes below.

```
1 the evidence You must abide
2 of money I called
3 to an ordeal We embarked on
4 upon it I dispensed
5 the crime He deprived her
6 herself on it It amounted
7 an adventure She alluded to
8 with his services She resigned
9 to very little They were subjected
10 by the decision She prides
11 herself to failure He disposed of
12 upon him He didn’t enlarge
```

2 Circle the correct word. In some sentences both words may be correct.

1 The results were terrible, but they decided not to dwell / impinge on them for long.
2 Mr Ellis referred / alluded to the crime in a very roundabout way, but he refused to enlarge / call upon it.
3 Many local people have contended / resigned themselves to a second-rate rubbish collection service, and furthermore have to dispense / contend with litter in the streets for weeks on end.
4 Rankin was deprived / disposed of his freedom, but he still took part / engaged in illegal activities.
5 We call / embark upon the government to adhere / abide to the agreed regulations.

Unit 54

1 True or false? Write T or F. If the meaning is false, write the true meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrase</th>
<th>Meaning?</th>
<th>T/F</th>
<th>True meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>► in the event of fire</td>
<td>= when you are building a fire</td>
<td>F</td>
<td>if a fire happens / if there is a fire</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 situations vacant</td>
<td>= empty accommodation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 at your discretion</td>
<td>= according to the law</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 to whom it may concern</td>
<td>= heading seen on a personal reference for a job</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 out of bounds</td>
<td>= out of control</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 O.N.O.</td>
<td>= or new offer</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 at your earliest convenience</td>
<td>= as soon as you are able to do something</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7 keep your distance</td>
<td>= stay close to something</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Literal meaning</td>
<td>Metaphorical meanings</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The book’s falling apart.</td>
<td>Things went downhill and her marriage <strong>fell apart</strong>. = had so many problems that it was impossible to continue existing (a relationship / sb’s world <strong>falls apart</strong>).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This lift is going down.</td>
<td>Their standards <strong>have gone down</strong> in recent months. = become worse in quality. <em>The computer system has gone down</em>. = stopped working temporarily.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The building is being knocked down.</td>
<td><em>She knocked the price down by 15 per cent. INF = reduced the price by 15 per cent. <strong>knockdown</strong> <strong>adj</strong> (knockdown prices).</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Goats feed on grain and grasses.</td>
<td>*Terrorism feeds on fear. = becomes stronger because of fear. <em>(feed on sth is often DISAPPROVING.)</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I soaked it up with a sponge.</td>
<td><em>We wandered around, soaking up the atmosphere. = absorbing it into our senses, body, and mind (soak up the sun).</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The water spilled over.</td>
<td>*The violence could spill over into neighbouring areas. = spread and begin to affect other areas. <em>His emotions spilled over after his big win. = he was unable to control his emotions.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stand back from the platform edge.</td>
<td><em>You should stand back and consider your future. = think about it as if you are not involved in it.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You need to tighten up the screws.</td>
<td><em>Airlines need to tighten up rules on baggage allowance. = make rules stricter or harder to avoid.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Turn the clock around/round.</td>
<td>*They turned the failing company round. = made it successful again. <em>They can turn repairs around in a few days. = complete them in a few days.</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>She wrapped it up for me.</td>
<td><em>The police have wrapped up the enquiry. = INF completed the enquiry (also wrap up a meeting / a deal).</em></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Tick the sentences which refer to a physical action.
   1 If you go to the market late, they usually knock things down by quite a lot. □
   2 I hardly touched the bookshelf, but it just fell apart. □
   3 Turn it round so that we can’t see the label on it. □
   4 I think that just about wraps up the meeting for today. See you tomorrow. □
   5 Stand back and let these people go by. □
   6 The oil was everywhere, but they tried to soak it up with a cloth. □
   7 I’m afraid I can’t answer your query right now; the computer’s just gone down. □
   8 I was boiling the milk and forgot about it. It spilled over and made a terrible mess. □

2 The same word is missing in each pair of sentences. Write it in.
   1 a These rules need to be ______ up.
      b Once the screws are ______ up, it’ll be safe.
   2 a The computer system suddenly ______ down yesterday.
      b After Mr Austin left, standards at the company really ______ down.
   3 a Trouble ______ over into the next region.
      b Her emotions ______ over and she broke down in tears.
   4 a I managed to knock them ______ to €150, which was great.
      b The lift was going ______ when it suddenly stopped.
   5 a Do you think they’ll be able to ______ the firm around?
      b They work very fast; they can ______ around a big repair in 24 hours.
   6 a The police decided to wrap ______ the investigation.
      b Wander around and just soak ______ the atmosphere of the town.
   7 a What exactly do baby fish ______ on?
      b Current government policies ______ on fear of the recession.

3 Write sentences using words from each column.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Let’s tighten</th>
<th>back</th>
<th>the regulations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The standard’s gone</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>and think about it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They knocked</td>
<td>apart</td>
<td>the shopping centre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Just stand</td>
<td>on</td>
<td>since she lost her job</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Her life has fallen</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>in recent years</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The towel soaked</td>
<td>up</td>
<td>insects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>They feed</td>
<td>down</td>
<td>the moisture</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Complete the Words of Wisdom with a suitable phrasal verb.

**Words of Wisdom**

- ‘When you are confused about life, (1) ____________ and reflect on your past.’
- ‘When you are really tense, go outside, (2) ____________ the sun and meditate for a while.’
- ‘If your relationship is (3) ____________, you both need to seek advice from an expert.’
- ‘To (4) ____________ a failing business, you often need to change the person in charge.’
- ‘Jealousy (5) ____________ insecurity. Don’t let yourself worry; be open with your partner.’
- ‘Poor sleep at night can mean that the previous day’s problems (6) ____________ to the next.’
- ‘When money is short, standards tend to (7) ____________ in business. Don’t let this happen.’

5 ABOUT YOU Look at the Words of Wisdom in Exercise 4. Do you agree or disagree with them? Write your answers in your notebook giving your reasons, or talk to another student.
A Bad news stories

Dictionaries may show these noun phrases as idioms or as separate entries, e.g. *lame duck* may be entered as a noun (*lame duck*), or an idiom at the entry for *lame*.

... The mayor claims that the row over his financial dealings is **a storm in a teacup**, and that he has been a victim of a **hatchet job** in the Daily Globe. He strongly denies any **conflict of interest** between his political role and his business dealings, though many are pointing the **finger of suspicion** in his direction ...

... While the academic books department of the company is not yet a **lost cause**, sharply falling sales are a big concern. The company has recently spent €50,000 to give them a **fighting chance** of survival, but that is a **drop in the ocean** compared to what is needed ...

... Plans to use part of the **green belt** for a new bypass have been a political **hot potato** for many years, and with the current council leader virtually a **lame duck**, this may not be the right time to pursue them.

**Glossary**

- **a storm in a teacup**: a lot of anger or worry about sth that is not important (also a **fuss about nothing**).
- **a hatchet job (on sb/sth)**: INF a strong written attack on sb or their work.
- **a conflict of interest**: a situation in which sb has two different jobs or roles, and this may affect their ability to choose or act fairly in either.
- **the finger of suspicion**: If the **finger of suspicion** is pointing at sb, they are suspected of committing a crime or being responsible for sth bad.
- **a lost cause**: sth that has no chance of succeeding.
- **a fighting chance**: a chance to achieve sth if you work very hard at it.
- **a drop in the ocean**: a very small amount that will have little or no effect.
- **the green belt**: an area of protected land around a city where building is not allowed.
- **a hot potato**: an issue that causes angry debate and is difficult to deal with.
- **a lame duck**: a person who is no longer successful or effective in a particular role.

1 Is the meaning similar or different? Write S or D.

1. The project can never succeed now. **The project's a lost cause.**
2. The row's just a storm in a teacup. **The row's just a lot of fuss about nothing.**
3. He wants to build on the green belt. **He wants to build on the park near the town centre.**
4. The offer was a drop in the ocean. **The offer hardly made any difference.**
5. The article was a hatchet job. **The article was very complimentary.**
6. There's no conflict of interest there. **There was no fighting there.**

2 Complete the dialogues. You will need more than one word.

1. They're not allowed to build on that open space. ~ No, it's in **the green belt** is pointing at him.
2. I've a strong feeling that he's guilty. ~ Yeah, **a hatchet job**.
3. I think they just might succeed. ~ I agree, they've got **a fighting chance**.
4. Nobody wants to tackle the budget problems. ~ Yes, it's a bit of **a storm in a teacup**.
5. $10,000 won't help the company at all. ~ No, it won't, it's just **a drop in the ocean**.
6. She's a politician but also has shares in the firm. ~ Yeah, I think there's **a conflict of interest**.
7. The prime minister's hopeless and he'll lose the election. ~ Yes, he's **a lame duck**.
8. They're getting upset about nothing. ~ I know. It's just **a storm in a teacup**.
9. There's no hope that the business will recover. ~ No, sadly it's **a lost cause**.
B Better news stories

Inspection gives financial service industry a clean bill of health

NEW TENNIS CLUB GETS NADAL’S SEAL OF APPROVAL

Car rally hailed a roaring success

NEW CHILDREN’S CENTRE WILL PROVIDE ‘A HEAD START IN LIFE’

Cricket win is a shot in the arm for New Zealand

Trade in endangered species a thing of the past

Working mothers can achieve a happy medium

Audiences wowed by thrills and spills of Winter Olympics

U-TURN ON IMMIGRATION POLICY

Glossary

a clean bill of health a statement that sb is healthy or that an organization is operating correctly or is in good condition.

a/the seal of approval a statement that gives a positive opinion of sth that sb has done.

a roaring success an event or project that is extremely successful.

a head start an advantage that helps you to be successful.

a shot in the arm sth that quickly gives you more energy, confidence, etc.

a thing of the past a thing that no longer exists or happens.

a/the happy medium a way of doing sth that is between two extreme positions or is satisfactory to everyone.

thrills and spills INF an exciting mix of dangerous activities.

a U-turn a sudden or complete change of policy or opinion. SYN a volte-face.

spotlight French phrases

Many French phrases, e.g. a volte-face, are used in English. A coup d’état is the sudden overthrow of a government by force or by revolution. A faux pas is an embarrassing mistake.

3 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 The plan will give the company a shot a of the past.
2 The race had all the thrills and b start by having private lessons.
3 You have to find a happy c of approval, so we start next week.
4 Some say that loyalty at work is a thing d face and began to oppose the war.
5 The business has been given a clean e in the arm which will improve profits.
6 The children were given a head f medium between work and play.
7 They did a complete volte- g spills we expected.
8 The boss gave our plan the seal h bill of health.

4 Put the words in order and add one word.

fair | the | spills | of | the | and | enjoy

1 roaring | birthday | the | was | party | a
2 on | turn | did | the | policy | government | a | the
3 a | find | he’s | to | medium | trying
4 bill | get | hope | to | health | we | a | of
5 in | a | has | there | been | d’état | Birania
6 shot | a | the | company | our | needs | in
7 interview | at | terrible | made | the | I | a | faux
8 the | of | letter-writing | is | past | a

Enjoy the thrills and spills of the fair

Types of idiom 147
C Colours

Do you know your colour idioms?

Are you the black sheep of the family?
Would you be happy if you had green fingers? Why / why not?
If you were given the red-carpet treatment, would you be pleased?
Have you ever had a black eye? How come?
Do you enjoy dealing with red tape?
Is it ever justifiable to tell white lies?
If you ended up with a white elephant, what could you do with it?
What would be a golden opportunity for you?
Have you ever bought anything on the black market?

Glossary

the black sheep (of the family) a person who is different from the rest of the family and who is considered bad or embarrassing.
green fingers A person with green fingers is good at making plants grow.
the red carpet a very special welcome given to an important visitor (the red-carpet treatment; put out the red carpet).
a black eye a bruise around your eye caused by an accident or sb hitting you.
red tape official rules or procedures that seem unnecessary and cause delays.
a white lie a lie told to avoid making sb else upset.
a white elephant a thing that is completely useless or no longer needed, and may have cost a lot of money.
a golden opportunity a specially good chance to do sth. (The chance of a lifetime is the opportunity to do sth that you will not be able to do again.)
the black market the illegal buying and selling of goods or currency that are officially controlled and hard to obtain.

5 Are the colours correct? Change any that are wrong.

▶ the white market black
  1 a gold opportunity pink elephant
  2 a black lie 6 the black sheep of the family
  3 the red carpet treatment brown fingers
  4 a blue eye 8 red tape

6 Complete the sentences with a colour idiom.

1 He didn't buy the TV legally. I think he got it on
2 I walked into a door, and the next morning I had
3 When my long-lost brother came to visit, we put out
4 She grows these vegetables herself; she's got
5 He's been given a round-the-world ticket – it's
6 They built a new shopping centre but no one goes there; it's just
7 We never talk about my cousin Donald. He's

7 ABOUT YOU Write your answers to the questions at the top of the page in your notebook, or talk to another student.
I can use prepositional idioms

A Book titles

- **Under One Roof**
  Families in the crowded inner city

- **Behind Closed Doors**
  How big business really works

- **From the Horse’s Mouth**
  Testimonies of wartime courage

- **Out of the Ordinary**
  Children with special talents

- **Within your Rights**
  A guide to workplace legislation

- **Computing Essentials in Plain English**
  Good Health Guide

- **Answers at your fingertips**
  Strictly by the Book
  A parent’s guide to child-rearing

Glossary

- **on the scrapheap**
  INF If sb/sth is on the scrapheap, they are no longer wanted or useful.

- **in the nick of time**
  INF just in time to prevent sth bad from happening.

- **under one roof**
  in the same home. SYN under the same roof.

- **behind closed doors**
  without the public knowing what is happening.

- **(straight) from the horse’s mouth**
  INF Information coming from the horse’s mouth comes from sb who is directly involved.

- **out of the ordinary**
  unusual or different.

- **(be) within your rights**
  (have or) having the moral or legal authority to do sth.

- **in plain English**
  simply and clearly expressed.

- **at your fingertips**
  near you or available for you to use immediately.

- **by the book**
  If you do sth by the book, you follow rules and instructions in a strict way.

1. **Is the meaning the same or different? Write S or D.**

   1. He told me what happened himself. S
   2. Something unusual happened. D
   3. What happened in private? S
   4. She’s within her rights to do that. S
   5. It needs to be written in plain English. D
   6. We got out in the nick of time. D

2. **Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.**

   The enquiry was held in private. DOORS the enquiry was held behind closed doors.

   1. I haven’t got the facts readily available. FINGERTIPS
   2. I didn’t see anything unusual. ORDINARY
   3. We do everything in the correct way. BOOK
   4. We arrived at the very last minute. TIME
   5. Twelve people are living together in the flat. ROOF
   6. Hundreds of workers will lose their jobs. SCRAPHEAP
   7. You have the authority to claim for this. RIGHTS
   8. She expressed the ideas clearly and simply. PLAIN
B A conversation

JO Has Helmut seen anything of Katrina recently?

JIM Well, apparently she rang him out of the blue the other day, hoping he was free for dinner. And in fact, he was at a loose end, but he told her he was up to his eyes in work.

JO Very wise. So did she want to meet up for old times' sake, do you think?

JIM In all probability, yeah. But between you and me, I think he'd be off his head to go back to her.

JO Too right. That relationship was a disaster right from the outset. And in his heart of hearts, he knows that.

Glossary

out of the blue unexpectedly; without warning.
at a loose end having nothing particular to do.
up to your eyes in sth INF having a lot of sth to do or deal with.
for old times' sake so that you can remember a happy time in the past.
in all probability = it is very likely.
between you and me used when you are telling sb sth that you do not want anyone else to know.
(right) from/at the outset from/at the very beginning. SYN (right) from/at the word go INF.
in your heart (of hearts) used for talking about true or secret feelings.

spotlight Phrases with head

You must be off your head. INF = crazy. SYN out of your mind INF.
The talk went over my head. = was too difficult for me to understand.
I was covered from head to toe in dust. = all over my body.

3 Complete the phrases with the correct prepositions.

1 in all probability
2 you and me /
3 your mind /
4 your head
5 a loose end
6 the outset /

4 Complete the sentences using the phrases from Exercise 3.

1 You paid €100 for that shirt? You must be !
2 I got caught in a thunderstorm and I was completely soaked
3 Why don’t you come over this evening, if you're
4 I would say that , we should be home before the weekend.
5 He thinks he’s got the job, but , his chances are slim.
6 It was clear that the idea wasn't going to work.

5 ABOUT YOU Complete the questions. Then write your answers to the questions in your notebook, or talk to another student.

1 When did you last get a call from an old friend out of the ? Who was it?
2 Are you at a loose this weekend? If so, what might you do?
3 Are you up to your in work at the moment?
4 Have you watched a TV programme recently that went over your ?
5 Do you ever listen to pieces of music for old times’ ?
6 Did you enjoy studying English right from the word ? Why? Why not?
C States

I want it **off my hands.**

It's **on its last legs.**

I can't keep it **on the road.**

The lights are **on the blink.**

The interior's not in very **good nick.**

My temper sometimes **gets me into hot water.**

I feel **on edge** the whole time.

I'm **in the doghouse** at home.

I'm **in a rut** at work.

I'm **at a crossroads**. What next?

---

Glossary

**on the blink** INF (of electrical equipment) not working properly.

**in good/excellent/bad nick** INF in good/excellent/bad condition.

**on the road** (of a car) in good condition so that it can be legally driven. OPP **off the road.**

**on its last legs** INF If sth is **on its last legs** it is going to stop functioning very soon.

**in the doghouse** INF, often HUMOROUS If you are **in the doghouse** sb is annoyed with you because you have done sth wrong.

**on edge** tense, nervous, or irritable. (If you are **on tenterhooks**, you are anxious because you are waiting to find out about sth.)

**in a rut** living or working in a situation that never changes. (See page 162.)

**at a crossroads** at a point in your life when you must make an important decision.

**be in/get (sb) into hot water** INF be in or get (sb) into trouble.

---

**spotlight hands**

_The children are off my hands._ = no longer my responsibility.

_Inflation is getting out of hand._ = difficult or impossible to control.

_A nurse will be on hand at the event._ = available to help.

---

6 **Tick the phrases which are informal.**

1. No one was on hand to help.
2. My son's in hot water at work.
3. The car's off the road at the moment.
4. The flat's in very bad nick.
5. The project will be off my hands soon.
6. I'm on tenterhooks about the results.
7. The TV's on the blink again.
8. This old radio is really on its last legs.

---

7 **Circle the correct preposition.**

1. My life is _at_ | _on_ a crossroads at the moment.
2. I once went to a party which got out _of_ | _off_ hand.
3. I don't feel I'm _on_ | _in_ a rut at the moment.
4. My computer is _on_ | _in_ its last legs.
5. My car/bike is _in_ | _on_ excellent nick.
6. My TV/MP3 player is _on_ | _in_ the blink.
7. I'm _in_ | _on_ edge at the moment, waiting for news of something.
8. I wish someone was constantly _on_ | _in_ hand to help me with my English.

---

8 **ABOUT YOU** Are the sentences in Exercise 7 true for you? If not, change them so that they are true. Write your answers in your notebook or tell a partner.
A Similes with (as) ... as ...

My mother struggled a bit after her accident, but she's fit as a fiddle now.

I didn't think Leo would know, but he gave me the answer quick as a flash.

Come on, you can do this – it's as easy as pie.

I'm not sleeping on that bed again – it's as hard as nails!

That young niece of yours is bright as a button.

I was quite worried when I saw Kate; she was white as a sheet.

I love my little brother – he's daft as a brush and he makes me laugh.

The captain stayed cool as a cucumber in spite of all the pressure.

Lucy’s thin as a rake. She needs to put on a bit of weight.

Do you want to borrow my suitcase? It's good as new.

Glossary

(as) fit as a fiddle fit and in good health (fiddle INF a violin).
(as) quick as a flash very quickly.
(as) easy as pie very easy.
(as) hard as nails very hard and uncomfortable.
(as) bright as a button (usually of a child or young person) very bright and intelligent.
(as) white as a sheet looking very ill or very frightened.
(as) daft as a brush very silly.
(as) cool as a cucumber very calm and controlled, especially in a difficult situation.
(as) thin as a rake very thin.
(as) good as new in very good condition, as it was when it was new.

Spotlight Similes

A simile is a phrase that compares one thing with another thing, and many are formed with as + adjective + as + noun. These are used to emphasize the adjective (e.g. if a child is as good as gold, they are very good). In spoken English, the first as is often omitted.

1 Correct the final word in each sentence.

- Jemima’s little girl’s as bright as a sheet. button
  1 He picked out the correct pictures as quick as a fiddle.
  2 We had to sit down but the sofa was hard as pie.
  3 My mother’s in her 70s but she’s fit as a flash.
  4 He’d heard the bad news, but he came into work cool as a brush.
  5 The tests are easy as new.
  6 She’s nice to the customers, but he’s daft as a cucumber.

2 Answer the questions with a simile with the opposite meaning.

- It was incredibly difficult, wasn’t it? No, it was easy as pie.
  1 Was it comfortable to sit on?
  2 Did she get very excited?
  3 Did he look well?
  4 Isn’t David’s little girl a bit slow at school?
  5 I believe he’s in very bad health, isn’t he?
  6 Hasn’t Lila put on weight?
B Similes with like

We can also make comparisons using like. These similes can be used for humorous or ironic effect.

I know what my wife’s thinking – I can read her like a book.

We tried these new pills on the dog and they worked like a dream.

Don’t mention the government to my uncle; it’s like a red rag to a bull.

Of course, as soon as I told Martha the news, it spread like wildfire.

I tried to explain it all to Dan, but it was like banging my head against a brick wall.

My father’s like a bull in a china shop, so don’t ask him to deal with a sensitive problem.

I can’t leave work early; my boss watches me like a hawk.

Asking Barry to pay for anything is like getting blood out of a stone.

We’ll never find that contact lens – it’s like looking for a needle in a haystack.

I thought this jacket would be too big but it fits like a glove.

Glossary

read sb like a book  
work/go like a dream  
be like a red rag to a bull  
spread like wildfire  
be (like) banging your head against a brick wall  
be like a bull in a china shop  
watch sb like a hawk  
be like getting blood out of a stone  
be like looking for a needle in a haystack  
fit (sb) like a glove

3 Circle the correct answer.
1 If someone watches you like a hawk, they watch you from a distance | carefully.
2 If something is like getting blood out of a stone, it is difficult to obtain | likely to be valuable.
3 If somebody can read you like a book, they know what you are doing | thinking.
4 If someone is like a bull in china shop, they’re strong and careful | clumsy and careless.
5 If something fits like a glove, it fits perfectly | is a bit tight.
6 If something works like a dream, it works well | well for a short period then fails.
7 If something is like looking for a needle in a haystack, it is very difficult to find | interesting.

4 Complete the sentences using the pictures to help you.

1 My mother watches me like a

2 I was amazed – Mary’s skirt fitted me like a

3 Getting Jerome to say thank you is like getting blood out of a

4 Mention the word ‘feminism’ to her and it’s like a red rag to a

5 Finding that one earring will be like looking for a

6 Dealing with those children is just like banging your

Types of idiom 153
A Sound patterns

Dictionaries may enter these phrases as idioms or collocations. The meaning is sometimes clear, e.g. scrimp and save, and sometimes idiomatic, e.g. bread and butter. However, the combination of words is not obvious, so you will need to learn these expressions.

There are rooms above the café where you can stay. They’re fairly cheap and cheerful, and I noticed a bit of wear and tear on the furniture when we were there recently. But they can’t afford to spend much on the rooms as well as the café, which is their real bread and butter.

My local team has been beaten fair and square in their last four games, so there’s rather an atmosphere of doom and gloom around the club at the moment.

Ciarian was born and bred in the west of Ireland. His family were poor and his parents had to scrimp and save to provide for them all. It was hard for his mother, who was very prim and proper, but for most families it was just part and parcel of growing up in that area.

Glossary

cheap and cheerful not of great quality, but enjoyable and good value.
wear and tear small marks and damage that appear over time as a result of normal use.
bread and butter a person or company’s main source of income.
fair and square in an honest way and without any doubt.
doom and gloom a feeling that a situation is very bad and without hope.
be born and bred used to say where sb was born and grew up.
scrimp and save spend money only on what is absolutely necessary.
prim and proper very careful about your appearance and behaviour, and easily shocked by what other people do or say.
be part and parcel (of sth) be an aspect of sth that has to be accepted.

spotlight Sound patterns

A common feature of fixed phrases joined by and is that the first or last sounds in the two words are the same, e.g. prim and proper, doom and gloom.

1 Complete the phrases.
   1 scrimp and
   2 born and
   3 doom and
   4 cheap and
   5 wear and
   6 prim and
   7 fair and
   8 part and

2 Complete the fixed phrase in the sentences.
   1 He was and in Paris, but lives in Cannes nowadays.
   2 There’s bound to be some and on these boots after six months.
   3 We lost the match and ; I have no complaints.
   4 A lot of families have to and to buy things in a recession.
   5 The economic prospects are not great, but it’s not all and .
   6 He makes a bit of money from music, but accountancy is his real and .
   7 Injuries are and of being a professional sportsman.
   8 It’s not luxurious, but our local hotel is and , and a nice place to stay.

3 ABOUT YOUR LANGUAGE Do you have similar phrases in your language? If so, do some of them also have sound patterns similar to these?
B Paired words and repeated words

Does he clean that car every day? – Yes, it's his pride and joy.
Have they chosen good colour schemes? – Er ... actually, I think they're a bit hit and miss.
Did you buy anything at the auction? – Nothing much – just a few bits and pieces.
Is your boss always like that? – Yes. Basically, divide and rule is the way he operates.
Is Helena making progress? – Yes, her English has come on in leaps and bounds.
Did he give a speech? – Yes, but thankfully it was short and sweet.
Did you enjoy the conference? – Yes, all in all I think it was very successful.
Will Carol move to the city? – No, she's a country girl through and through.

Glossary

sb's pride and joy a person or thing that gives sb great pleasure or satisfaction.
hit and miss unpredictable; sometimes succeeding and sometimes failing.
bits and pieces/bobs INF small individual things of no great value. SYN odds and ends.
divide and rule a way of controlling people by encouraging them to fight and argue among themselves.
in/by leaps and bounds quickly or by a large amount (usually used when talking about sb's progress).
short and sweet not long or complicated.
all in all having considered everything. SYN all things considered.
through and through used to say that sb has all the qualities of a particular type of person.

Spotlight Repetition

There are many phrases, such as all in all, which use the same word twice: little by little (= gradually), step by step (= moving slowly from one stage to the next), day by day (= in small slow stages as each day passes), head to head (= competing directly), etc.

4 Find six phrases using words from the box.

leaps short divide odds hit pride sweet joy ends rule bounds miss

5 Complete the sentences with a suitable fixed phrase. Keep a similar meaning.

- My eyes gradually got used to the lights.
- I'm taking a few small things of no value.
- Some of her ideas are good, some are not so good.
- He's made a huge amount of progress.
- The letter was simple and concise.
- It was a great success, everything considered.
- We'll be competing directly with them.
- That boat's the thing that gives him most pleasure.
- Everything about her is Irish.
- We must do this carefully from one stage to the next.
- His policy is to get them fighting among themselves.

My eyes got used to the lights little by little.
I'm taking a few small things of no value.
Her ideas are a bit good, some are not so good.
He's come on a huge amount of progress.
The letter was simple and concise.
It was a great success, everything considered.
We'll be competing directly with them.
That boat is his thing that gives him most pleasure.
She's Irish everything about her is.
We must do this carefully from one stage to the next.
His policy is get them fighting among themselves.
A Words of wisdom

A number of common sayings give advice, or say something that is often thought to be true.

TEN Words of Wisdom

Nothing ventured, nothing gained.

People (who live) in glass houses shouldn’t throw stones.

A leopard cannot change its spots.

Too many cooks spoil the broth.

Strike while the iron is hot.

You can’t teach an old dog new tricks.

You can’t make an omelette without breaking eggs.

(There’s) no time like the present.

Many hands make light work.

One good turn deserves another.

Meaning

You have to take risks if you want to achieve sth.
People who have faults should not criticize other people for having the same faults.
People can't change their character, especially a bad character.
If too many people are involved in sth, it won't be done well. (Broth is a soup.)
Make use of an opportunity immediately.
You can't make people change their ideas, ways of working, etc. when they've had them a long time.
You can't achieve sth important without a few problems or unpleasant effects.
Now is the best time to do sth, not in the future.
A job is made easier if a lot of people help.
You should help sb who has helped you.

1 Answer the questions.

1 Which two idioms are saying something very similar about people's character?

2 Which two idioms appear to be saying completely opposite things?

3 Which two idioms express the importance of taking action now?

4 Which two idioms talk about the way we behave towards others?

2 Which idiom best summarizes each of these situations?

1 It will be difficult setting up a new business, but why not give it a try?
2 If we want to move forward, we must cut costs and get rid of some staff.
3 Maria did my shopping for me, so I said I'd help her with her homework.
4 If everyone lends a hand, we can clean up the flat in an hour or so.
5 My mum's overcooked vegetables all her life; she won't change now.
6 It took us a long time to clean the flat because we all got in each other's way.
7 He complains about me smoking, but I've seen him with a packet of cigarettes!
8 Let's buy that flat now, before prices start to go up.

3 ABOUT YOU Which idioms express the best advice or the most truth, in your opinion? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
B First part only

There are some sayings where you only need to say the first part. The second part (shown in brackets below) is usually omitted. When you just say the first part, your voice often rises on the final word.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Saying</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>when in Rome (do as the Romans do)</td>
<td>They use chopsticks here.</td>
<td>In a foreign country or unfamiliar situation, you should behave in the same way as the people around you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ Well, when in Rome ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a bird in the hand (is worth two in the bush)</td>
<td>I had an offer of £200 for my bike, but I think I’ll wait for a better offer.</td>
<td>It is better to have sth that you can be certain of than to risk losing it by trying to get sth much better.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ Well, a bird in the hand ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two's company (three's a crowd)</td>
<td>Can I come with you and Mel?</td>
<td>People in a romantic relationship don’t want a third person with them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ No, two's company ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better the devil you know (than the devil you don’t)</td>
<td>Would you like a new boss?</td>
<td>Someone you don’t like but know may be better than somebody you don’t know who might be worse.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ Not really. Better the devil you know ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth)</td>
<td>If a gang member is beaten up, the rest take revenge. It's an eye for an eye.</td>
<td>Used to say that you should punish sb by doing to them what they have done to you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>don’t count your chickens (before they’re hatched)</td>
<td>I'm sure I’ll get that job.</td>
<td>Don't be too confident about a future event before it has happened.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ Don't count your chickens ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the grass is always greener (on the other side of the fence)</td>
<td>My life seems so boring compared with my sister's.</td>
<td>Used to say that people always think others are in a better situation than they are.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ Well, as they say: the grass is always greener...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the spirit is willing (but the flesh is weak)</td>
<td>Do you fancy a game of squash?</td>
<td>Used for telling sb that you would like to do sth but do not have the energy or strength to do it.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ Well, the spirit’s willing ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>birds of a feather (flock together)</td>
<td>Everyone here is rich.</td>
<td>People of the same sort are usually found together.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>~ Well, birds of a feather ...</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4 Match 1–6 with a–f.

1 The grass is always greener  
2 The spirit’s willing  
3 Two’s company  
4 Don’t count your chickens  
5 Birds of a feather  
6 A bird in the hand  

a before they’re hatched.  
b is worth two in the bush.  
c on the other side of the fence.  
d flock together.  
e three’s a crowd.  
f but the flesh is weak.

5 Which saying best summarizes each of these situations?

1 If they attack us, we attack them. It’s as simple as that.  
2 You say the exam was easy, but you haven’t got the results yet.  
3 I don’t like the present leader, but the next might be even worse.  
4 Now we’re in Poland, we’re meant to kiss friends three times.  
5 Jane and her boyfriend don’t want a younger sister following them around.  
6 I’ve got a well-paid job, but Ingrid’s job sounds much more interesting.

6 ABOUT YOU Is there much truth in any of the sayings in the table? Do you particularly agree or disagree with any of them? Write your answers in your notebook, or talk to another student.
Review: Types of idiom

Unit 55

1 Match the verbs in the box with their literal and metaphorical meanings below.

stand back  fall apart  spill over  wrap sth up

1 break into pieces.
2 cover something, e.g. by putting paper or cloth round it.
3 move away from something, especially something dangerous.
4 think about a situation as if you are not involved in it.
5 spread and begin to affect other areas.
6 have so many problems that it is impossible to continue.
7 finish something.
8 accidentally flow out of a container.

2 Complete the phrasal verb in each sentence.

1 You just need to take up the two screws on either end.
2 This company is in such a mess, it will take a genius to turn it around.
3 He's too close to the situation. He needs to stand back and be more objective.
4 These birds mostly feed on worms and small insects.
5 Trouble started in the main square, then spilled over into the neighbouring streets.
6 They cut down the old factory to make way for a new supermarket.
7 They can't answer our query right now: their computers have broken down.
8 I wrapped up my girlfriend's present last night, and gave it to her this morning.

Unit 56

1 Match 1–8 with a–h.

1 a lame  a elephant  a h
2 a happy  b start  d in the ocean
3 a black  c bill of health  e medium
4 a white  f duck  g eye
5 a drop  h chance
6 a clean  7 a fighting
8 a head  9 a fighting

2 Complete the texts.

John Denham's new film has been a roaring (1) success with the public, and has even earned the (2) approval of approval from most of the critics. This is just the (3) sign in the arm the British film industry was looking for, and Denham is sure to get the red-carpet treatment when he arrives at the Vienna Film Festival later today.

The (5) cloud of suspicion is again pointing at MPs who continue to hold influential posts in business while working as MPs. The issue has been a hot (6) topic for years, and critics believe that it must create a (7) stir of interest. However, in an interview yesterday, a senior minister dismissed the allegations as a (8) sideshow in a teacup.
3 Complete the idioms in the questions.
1 Is there anything you would buy on the market?
2 In what circumstances would you tell a lie?
3 Is letter-writing a of the past?
4 Have you ever missed an opportunity?
5 Do you often get annoyed by tape?
6 How important is it to protect the belt?
7 Is promotion of organic food just a about nothing?
8 Is the attempt to halt global warming a cause?

4 ABOUT YOU Write your own answers to Exercise 3 in your notebook, or talk to another student.

Unit 57

1 Cross out the noun or noun phrase which does not follow the words in italics.
1 Someone or something is at:
   a) your fingertips b) the outset c) all probability d) a crossroads
2 Someone or something is in:
   a) a rut b) closed doors c) plain English d) the doghouse
3 Someone or something is on:
   a) its last legs b) edge c) tenterhooks d) the blue
4 Someone or something can be out of:
   a) their heart b) their mind c) the ordinary d) hand
5 Someone or something can be on the:
   a) scrapheap b) road c) nick of time d) blink

2 Complete the idioms with adjectives from the box.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>last</th>
<th>deep</th>
<th>closed</th>
<th>good</th>
<th>plain</th>
<th>old</th>
<th>loose</th>
<th>same</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. behind doors
2. under the roof
3. in English
4. on its legs
5. for times' sake
6. at a end
7. in water
8. in very nick

3 Complete the definitions.
1 If something is on its last legs, it is old and will probably stop working soon.
2 If something goes over your head, it is.
3 If something is on the blink, it isn't.
4 If something is out of the ordinary, it is.
5 If someone is in hot water, they are.
6 If you are at a loose end, you have.
7 If someone is off their head, they are.
8 If something is in good nick, it is.

Review: Types of idiom 159
Unit 58

1 Change one letter in each sentence to create correct similes.
   1 She’s as bright as a mutton, and doing brilliantly at school. button
   2 He got back from the expedition looking thin as a cake.
   3 We must get a new bed; this one’s as hard as rails to sleep on.
   4 Look at this wetsuit – it hits like a glove.
   5 I’d ask him to pay, but it’s like getting flood out of a stone.
   6 She won’t do as I say. It’s like banging your head against a brick wall.
   7 He thinks I don’t understand him, but I can lead him like a book.
   8 Raising the subject of politics is like a red bag to a bull with him.
   9 The boy was as white as a sheep, and I was worried he might faint.

2 Complete the sentences using a simile.
   1 If a rumour gets around fast, it spreads
   2 If something is hard to find, it’s like looking for
   3 If something is in very good condition, it’s as good
   4 If someone is very calm under pressure, they’re as cool
   5 If someone is very clever, they’re bright
   6 If something is very simple, it’s easy
   7 If someone is suspicious of you, they might watch you
   8 If someone responds very fast, they answer you as quick

Unit 59

1 Put the dominoes in the correct order to make a joined sequence of idioms. Write the correct order of dominoes below.

```
and tear. Little by little. Scrimp and save. By leaps
1 and sweet. Pride 7 and rule. Wear
2 and tear. Little 8 and bounds. Hit
3 and miss. Fair 9 and joy. Bread
4 and gloom. Divide 10 and butter. Doom
5 and save. By leaps 11 and proper. Short
6 and square. Prim 12 by little. Scrimp
```

2, 12, 5
2  Are the sentences true or false? Write T or F.
   1  If someone’s prim and proper, they are careful about what they say or do.
   2  If you’re going to buy a few bits and bobs, you’re being very specific.
   3  If you have to scrimp and save, you need to be careful with money.
   4  If someone was born and bred in Thailand, they spent their childhood there.
   5  If you’re worried about your bread and butter, you’re hungry.
   6  If you explain something step by step, you explain the whole thing quickly.
   7  If someone’s a city person through and through, they are most at home in the city.
   8  If life is all doom and gloom for someone, they’re very happy at the moment.
   9  If your phone service is quite hit and miss, it needs to be improved.
  10  If two teams go head to head, they compete with each other.

Unit 60

1  Write your answers.
   ►  What can’t you count before they’re hatched? Your chickens.
   1  What can’t a leopard change?
   2  What should you strike while it’s hot?
   3  What can’t you teach an old dog?
   4  What happens with too many cooks?
   5  What’s the advantage of many hands?
   6  What shouldn’t people in glass houses do?

2  Here are the second parts of some idioms that are often omitted when we speak. Write the first part.
   ► Birds of a feather flock together.
   1  before they’re hatched.
   2  , three’s a crowd.
   3  , do as the Romans do.
   4  , but the flesh is weak.
   5  than the devil you don’t.
   6  on the other side of the fence.
   7  is worth two in the bush.
   8  and a tooth for a tooth.
Idioms – some interesting histories

How did English idioms come into use? Here we show the meanings behind some idioms, and how some of them developed.

**beat about the bush** (Unit 35)
This phrase refers to a technique used for hunting. Some hunters in the forest beat the trees or bushes to scare the birds or animals, which were then shot by other hunters as they tried to escape. **Beating about the bush** was therefore a preparation for catching the birds or animals, but without actually achieving it. If people **beat about the bush**, they keep talking, but without getting to the main point.

**in a rut** (Unit 57)
A rut is a deep track made by a wheel in muddy ground which is then difficult to get the vehicle out of. If you are **in a rut**, you are living or working in a situation that never changes.

**be in the doldrums** (Unit 18)
The doldrums is a 19th-century expression meaning a state of inactivity or laziness. Sailors used it to refer to certain areas of the ocean near the Equator where lack of wind made it difficult to sail. A business that is **in the doldrums** is not doing well.

**quick/slow off the mark** (Unit 30)
In athletics, the mark is the starting point in a race, or the line that indicates it, so someone who is **quick off the mark** makes a quick start. You can also describe someone as being **quick** or **slow off the mark** when they are quick or slow in responding to a situation.

**drive a wedge between people** (Unit 7)
A wedge is a piece of wood or metal with one thin end and one thick end; you use it to keep two things apart or to split wood. If you **drive a wedge between** two people, you make them start disliking or feeling suspicious of each other.

**rest on your laurels** (Unit 19)
Laurel leaves were used in Roman times to make a crown for the winner of a race or competition. If you **rest on your laurels**, you enjoy your success, but stop trying to improve your performance.

Look at our website for more: www.oup.com/elt/wordskills
Unit 1

1  get out of bed on the wrong side
2  not out of the woods
3  take a back seat
4  my heart sank

2
1  sore (a sore point)
2  stroke (hasn’t done a stroke of work)
3  thing (the next thing I knew)
4  foot (put my foot in it)
5  Having (Having said that)
6  more (more than happy)
7  pushed (we’ll be hard pushed to …)
8  much (I thought as much)
9  serves (it serves her right for …)
10  personally (take it personally)

3  The style is INFORMAL, and on is optional.
   (= continue doing sth in a determined way,
    even though it is difficult)
2  if my memory serves me correctly could also be if my memory serves me well/right.
   (used for saying that you think you have remembered
   sth correctly)
3  keeping up with the Joneses: the style is INFORMAL and usually DISAPPROVING.
   (= trying to have all the possessions and social
    achievements that your friends and neighbours have)
4  the last straw could also be the final straw, or even the straw that breaks the camel’s back.
   (= the last in a series of bad events, that makes it impossible for you to accept a situation any longer)
5  rest assured (that) is FORMAL. (= be completely certain or confident (that))

4
1  hit the ground running, sort out the sheep from the goats; put a brave face on it; throw in the towel; were all in the same boat; Kevin’s bark was worse than his bite.
2 a throw in the towel
   b sort out the sheep from the goats (‘separate the sheep from the goats’ is also possible)
   c Kevin’s bark was worse than his bite
   d hit the ground running
   e were all in the same boat
   f put a brave face on it

Unit 2

1  track 3  chip 5  corner/spot
2  sleeve 4  dust 6  chest

2
1  She’s in the driving seat.
2  I’m sure we’re on the right track.
3  Strike while the iron is hot.
4  Wait for the dust to settle.
5  The company is on the ropes.
6  She’s in a tight corner/spot (right now).
7  He has / He’s got a chip on his shoulder.
8  She plays her cards close to her chest.

3  The common idea with the head idioms is of using your brain or intelligence. The common idea linking the heart idioms is emotions or feelings.
   have your head screwed on INF be able to make sensible decisions.
   lose your head become unable to act in a calm, sensible way.
   use your head think carefully so that you understand sth or avoid making a mistake.
   break sb’s heart make sb feel extremely unhappy. (When used without further explanation, the reference is to sb ending a romantic relationship.)
   take sth to heart be very affected or upset by sth that sb has said or done.
   not have the heart to do sth not be able to do sth because you know that it will upset sb else.
   I let my heart rule my head = I act according to what I feel, rather than doing what I think is sensible.

4  Ships and sailing: take the wind out of sb’s sails, learn the ropes
   Radio and telecommunications: be on the same wavelength, get your wires crossed
   Horseriding: be in the saddle, keep a tight rein on sth/sb
   Weapons and war: bite the bullet, beat a hasty retreat

5
1  be in the saddle
2  learn the ropes
3  be on the same wavelength
4  beat a hasty retreat
5  take the wind out of sb’s sails
6  keep a tight rein on sth/sb
7  get your wires crossed
Unit 3

1 1 around 4 in 7 into
2 2 to 5 on 8 down
3 3 up 6 for

2 1 dislike 4 persuaded
2 wrong/stupid/bad 5 killed
3 landed 6 wrote

3 1 out 5 down
2 up 6 up
3 around/round 7 down
4 on 8 out of

4 1 watch out for snakes
2 stand out against discrimination
3 let both of them off
4 burst in on us
5 hold it against him

5 1 watch out for sth or sb 4 hold sth against sb
2 burst in on sb 5 let sb off
3 stand out against sth

Unit 4

1 1 Will there be a union climbdown / a climbdown by the union?
2 Was there a police cover-up?
3 We asked a passer-by.
4 There was a breakout from prison last night. OR There was a prison breakout last night.
5 The judge gave a brief summing-up. OR The judge's summing-up was brief.
6 Will the team give us / provide backup? OR Will backup be provided by the team? OR Will we get backup from the team?

2 1 bystanders/onlookers 5 getaway
2 intake 6 backup
3 climbdown 7 outbreak
4 breakout 8 passer-by

3 1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 T 8 F

4 1 were knocked out 5 off-putting
2 worn out 6 breakaway
3 watered down 7 spoken out against it
4 leftovers 8 ongoing

Unit 5

1 1 quick 4 gladly
2 Deep, surface 5 thumb
3 barking 6 tough

2 1 hopping 5 own voice
2 two short planks 6 as a hatter
3 it cool 7 his thumb
4 mad keen on 8 as old boots

3 1 P 2 N 3 P 4 P 5 P 6 N 7 N 8 N

4 1 word (a man of his word)
2 soft (a soft touch)
3 earth (the salt of the earth)
4 creature (a creature of habit)
5 unknown (an unknown quantity)
6 spark (a bright spark)
7 nobody’s/no (nobody’s/no fool)
8 piece of work (a nasty piece of work)

Unit 6

1 1 Dad went to great lengths to help them.
2 We were given a helping hand with our writing.
3 They managed to hold their marriage together.
4 She doesn’t have your best interests at heart.
5 I thank my lucky stars that I’m healthy.
6 She needs a shoulder to cry on.

2 1 turn to
2 sets her apart
3 shoulder to cry on
4 there for me
5 goes to great lengths / goes out of his way
6 went out of her way / went to great lengths
7 thank my lucky stars
8 hold the family together

4 1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 F

5 1 sure of herself 5 get round
2 his foot down 6 her round your little finger
3 picking on 7 walk all over
4 pushes you 8 have/get his own

Unit 7

1 1 G 2 B 3 B 4 G 5 G 6 G 7 B 8 B
2 Janet and Dom (Dom and Janet) are **made** for each other.
3 Do you think they will **get** hitched?
4 You could be storing **up** trouble for later.
5 It isn’t easy to walk **away** from an argument.
6 Their marriage went through a bad **patch**.
7 They’re living in each other’s **pockets**.

4
1 messed her around/about
2 answer to my boss
3 is piling up
4 finished / broken up with Pilar
5 held me back
6 let me down

5
1 finished (finished with him)
2 as (do as I pleased)
3 break-up (break-up)
4 anything / my right arm (I’d give anything / my right arm to)
5 let (let her down)
6 messing (messing her about)
7 sooner (I’d far sooner)
8 myself (please myself)
9 bear (doesn’t bear thinking about)
10 arm (I’d give my right arm to)

**Unit 8**

1
1 (as) miserable as sin
2 On top of
3 your own flesh and blood
4 turned on
5 account for
6 on top of
7 fight like cat and dog
8 There’s little/no love lost between them.

2
1 flesh 3 ranks 5 on
2 dog 4 top 6 take

4
1 They lavish far too much money **on** their children.
2 There’s a danger they will **put** their son on a pedestal.
3 She’s very naughty; they let her get **away** with murder.
4 Since the divorce, he’s distanced **himself** from his family.

5 No wonder the child was unhappy; she was **starved** of attention.
6 Try to **make** a point of praising your middle child’s creativity.

5
1 pedestal
2 murder
3 result
4 point
5 out
6 starved (‘deprived’ is also possible)
7 out
8 back
9 lavish

**Unit 9**

1
1 The news is so bad that I can’t take it in.
2 The boy was screaming/laughing/shouting his head off.
3 She was crying her eyes out.
4 I’m at the end of my tether.
5 He went off the deep end.
6 The news stirred up a lot of anger.
7 Please don’t wind her up.
8 I’m (feeling) on top of the world.

2
1 up 4 off 7 stir
2 dumps 5 deep 8 top
3 end 6 apparent

3
1 He poured his heart out to me.
2 Don’t take sides on this issue.
3 He must keep his anger in check.
4 Whose side are you on?
5 That’s easier said then done.
6 Don’t bottle up your feelings.
7 I’m dying for a coffee.

4
1 even keel (on an even keel)
2 sides (sides with)
3 cool (cool down) / calm (calm down)
4 go at (had a go at)
5 dying (I’d been dying to)
6 check (kept his temper in check)
7 flares (flares up)
8 said than done (that’s easier said than done)
9 up the wrong way (rubs me up the wrong way)
10 bottle up (bottle up your feelings)
Unit 10

1. he's growing fast
2. we don't need it any more
3. put them in the bin
4. it keeps falling over
5. it can go in the lorry
6. someone might steal your wallet
7. fell asleep
8. he was in pain

Unit 12

1. add 4 went 7 err
2. comes/came 5 play 8 bat
3. fruit 6 put

Unit 11

1. lay my hand hands
2. fork over £30 out
3. pay out off
4. on the breadqueue breadline
5. to fill back on fall
6. be better on off

Unit 13

1. off-colour 3 don't know 5 become ill
2. the bathroom 4 unwell 6 fall over

2. starting to wear off now
3. death warmed up
4. coming down with a cold
5. blacked out
6. take it easy
7. his usual/normal self

3. weather 3 going
2. come 4 off, easy

4. 1 G 2 B 3 B 4 B 5 B 6 G 7 B 8 G
Unit 14

1  crow  4  cutting  7  flagged
2  murder  5  drop  8  pulled
3  snail’s  6  cut

2  get from A to B  4  blocked me in
2  murder  5  cutting it fine
3  As the crow flies  6  miles from anywhere

4  G  B  3  B  4  G  5  G  6  B

5  a gear  4  the end of the road
2  a green light  5  the rails
3  ticking over  6  steam

6  the green light  4  the end of the road
1  down that road  5  up a gear
3  us on the map  6  down the road

Unit 15

1  Sam cleaned it all off polished
2  we can set up with him settle
3  I could eat a house horse
4  grab a mouth to eat bite
5  burnt to a chip crisp/cinder
6  making my taste water mouth
7  eats like a mouse horse
8  by word or mouth of

2  picks at  5  like a bird
2  full / full up  6  settle up
3  leftovers  7  a bite / a bite to eat
4  by word of mouth

3  looking foolish  5  being overambitious
2  seeming innocent  6  energy
3  TV  7  events getting worse
4  having influence

4  the best thing since sliced bread
2  bitten off more than she can chew
3  eating out of his hand

Unit 16

1  1 U  2 U  3 P  4  P  5 U  6 P  7 U  8 P
2  colours (with flying colours)
2  of trying (it’s not for want of trying)
3  me off (told me off)
4  my head (it went over my head)
5  apply (apply himself)
6  him back (it’s … holding him back)
7  signs of (showing signs of)
8  new leaf (turned over a new leaf)
9  marked me (marked me down)
10  or tail of it (can’t make head or tail of it)
11  of course / of routine (as a matter of course / of routine)
12  socks up (pull his socks up)

3  coming on
2  make head or tail of this
3  night after night
4  next to nothing
5  scraped through
6  holding him back
7  cut out
8  running
9  apply myself
10  in/by leaps and bounds

4  1  told  4  a) on, bounds; b) signs
2  socks  5  matter
3  flying  6  show

Unit 17

1  take sth in your stride
2  get your foot in the door
3  keep your ear to the ground
4  put all your eggs in one basket
5  keep your feet on the ground
6  make a name for yourself

2  1 foot  4 options  7 grapevine
2  stride  5 ground  8 alone
3  name  6 pinning  9 keep
tricks of the business **trade**
some of the furniture **part**
it’ll make some doing **take**
pass it through to the others **on**
under her arm **wing**
**close by** ten years **on**
he got the pull **push/boot/elbow**
throw his size about **weight**

**Unit 18**

1. The deal has fallen / is going to fall through.
2. We survived thanks to the government.
3. Michael White is on the verge of resigning.
4. There are fears that the company could go to the wall.
5. A management buyout emerged at the eleventh hour.
6. Their future hangs in the balance.
7. The government will bail them out.
8. The company had pulled out of the deal.

**Unit 20**

1. **buyout** 4. **stand** 7. **through**
2. **hanging** 5. **go** 8. **bailout**
3. **pull out** 6. **verge** 9. **shore / prop**

**Unit 19**

1. a short space of the time
2. cut out of the middleman
3. Correct.
4. rest up on your laurels
5. Correct.
6. going on strong

Correct.
the going pay rate

1. middleman 5. success
2. at the right time 6. rate
3. space of time 7. off
4. on our laurels 8. strong

1. boat 5. false
2. In 6. water
3. Both are correct. 7. corners
4. top-heavy 8. sell up

An opportunity to do something.
Because they don’t want a situation that is becoming unsuccessful to get worse.
The past. / A past event.
Annoyed or upset.
Yes, because I’d be in trouble.
**Most likely answers are:** cut back on staff, sell poorer quality food/drinks.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10
5 out, tried 3 as you 5 top 1 had big bags 11 on the playing cards
2 save their life 4 pitch 6 make a 6 to get wind me up

Unit 21
1 We set up camp near a lake. They rolled up late as usual. Try not to tire yourself out. The cash came in handy. You should go easy on the cakes. Don’t take the easy way out.

2 wore herself out/was worn out/tired herself out 1 big 4 but 7 off
2 came in handy/useful 2 shelf 5 limit 8 wouldn’t
3 rolled up 3 better 6 popped
4 put it up 5 keep an eye 8 f
5 keep an eye 6 easy on
6 easy on 7 make do
7 make do 8 behind
8 behind 3 G 2 G 3 B 4 G 5 B 6 B

4 the rain held off 1 broke, tears 5 hear of
2 it just tipped down 2 glowing terms 6 big day
3 being soaked to the skin 3 shut, up 7 bottom, heart
4 stumbled on/across an incredible band 4 break, bank 8 sky, limit
5 going down a storm 7 the high point came when they
6 kicked off with an amazing version 8 went down pretty well too
7 the high point came when they 9 putting on a real show

Unit 22
1 1 G 2 B 3 G 4 G 5 B 6 G 7 B 8 B
9 G 10 B

2 bland blind 4 mine mind
2 sell tell 5 fall call
3 blew flew 6 slapped snapped

3 in the eye 4 pick you up / call for you
2 bag/bundle 5 his eyes off
3 round to 6 chatted away

4 had in the mind 7 the same like
2 picked me all up 8 flew well by
3 could tell him 9 chatted himself away
4 got him round to 10 look at him

Unit 23
1 g 2 d 3 e 4 b 5 a 6 h 7 c 8 f
2 1 big 4 but 7 off
2 shelf 5 limit 8 wouldn’t
3 better 6 popped

3 1 She really spoke from the heart.
2 The good weather really made my day.
3 You can get this medicine off the shelf.
4 Mum goes/went on and on about tidying my room.
5 Winning was the icing on the cake.
6 It’s not every day you win the lottery.
7 Please raise your glasses to the happy couple.
8 The ceremony went off without a hitch.

Unit 24
1 1 get 3 dead 5 time
2 safety 4 took 6 worse

2 1 and catch up on
2 always brought out the worst
3 under no obligation
4 I had nothing to lose
5 Go for it!
6 there is safety
7 a whale of a time

3 1 look great 4 aren’t 7 older
2 older 5 under 8 terrible
3 don’t enjoy 6 in good shape

4 1 look, keeps 4 pushing, up
2 now, bones 5 million, takes years off
3 years, shape 6 friends
Unit 25

1. off   3. ground   5. aside
2. in   4. below   6. a par

2. hit   3. way   5. off
2. bench   4. par   6. on

3. We’re on a par with Everton.
2. The coach brushed the comments aside.
3. We are in contention for the title.
4. He’s confident the strategy will pay off.
5. We’re gaining ground on the league leaders.
6. Is he going to gamble on Palmer tonight?

4. P 2 U 3 U 4 P 5 P 6 P 7 U 8 P

5. came   4. held   7. striking
2. dug   5. out   8. running
3. eased   6. hook

Unit 26

1. cuff   5. without
2. the best   6. miss out on it
3. from the beginning   7. think about
4. later   8. eyes

2. off the wall   4. feedback
2. off the cuff   5. flash by / fly by
3. it in mind   6. all along

3. eye to eye   3. lined, cater   5. pat
2. miss, knows   4. bounce   6. back, bear

4. We must bridge the gap between rich and poor.
2. I didn’t see eye to eye with the teacher.
3. She opened my eyes to more important things.
4. We came away with a lot of new ideas.
5. I gave an answer off the top of my head.
6. The organizers deserve a pat on the back.

5. by   3. wall   5. thought
2. know   4. for   6. away

Unit 27

1. less   3. is   5. get rid of it
2. stop   4. known   6. disappears

2. He put pressure on her to change her mind. OR
   He put her under pressure …
2. His comments were off the record. OR
   His comments weren’t intended to be on the record.
3. We need to do this, and the sooner the better.
4. He’s a household name.
5. The secrets have recently leaked out.
6. The incident will soon blow over.
7. She blew it (up) out of (all) proportion.
8. His comments have stirred up a lot of anger.

3. D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 S

4. open   5. under the carpet
2. mixed   6. true
3. speak   7. brunt
4. without fire   8. lengths

Unit 28

1. the robbers   4. secret information
2. under-age drinking   5. gambling
3. Both are logical.   6. production

2. in, for   4. at   7. in, of
2. on, for   5. in, of   8. in
3. in   6. with

3. lying (lying in wait for)
2. make/run (make/run off with)
3. possession (in possession of)
4. wake (in the wake of)
5. lookout (had been on the lookout for)
6. crack (crack down on)

4. d   2 f   3 e   4 a   5 b   6 c

5. gradually   4. make it stricter
2. are found innocent   5. a warning
3. increasing   6. more responsibly

6. They’re going to phase the scheme out. OR …
   phase out the scheme.
2. The policeman went under cover (as a criminal).
3. He led the boy astray.
4. She wants to clear her name.
5. The police are pressing / have pressed charges
   (against him).
6. They are going on the offensive (against him).
Unit 29

1 turnout  4 boarded up  7 broke
2 join/combine  5 go ahead  8 walks of life
3 made  6 event

2
1 calling  5 In the
2 passed/went off  6 forces
3 go-ahead  7 our way
4 bring/put, end  8 turned out

3
1 a sit-in  4 Both are possible.
2 spread  5 Both are possible.
3 to  6 down

4
1 They will never back down.
2 Keep it to yourself.
3 We will certainly press ahead with our plans.
4 He always stood up for his beliefs.
5 Why did they cordon off the café?
6 How will we spread the word?
7 The talks paved the way for the reforms.
8 It’s very hard to get our message across.

Unit 30

1 level (equal is also possible)
2 advantage
3 reasonable/logical
4 bad
5 reacting/responding
6 criticized/attacked
7 thinking
8 better

2
1 fire  3 up  5 boils
2 slow  4 final  6 plucked

3
1 put  5 Both are correct.
2 Both are correct.
3 having  6 words
4 give  7 call
5 run and run

4
1 house, order  5 wake-up call
2 benefit, doubt  6 give/budge/move, inch
3 jump, bandwagon  7 war, words
4 have, field  8 bode well

Unit 31

1 different  4 possible
2 dispute  5 continue/proceed
3 urgent  6 part of what they want

2
1 free up
2 can ill
3 standing firm
4 press on / press ahead
5 (being) poles apart / (being) at loggerheads / (being) locked in battle
6 meet each other halfway
7 hang in the balance

3
1 battle  4 in both camps
2 bullet  5 battle
3 guns  6 line

4
1 broken ranks
2 foot in both camps
3 running battle over this (for ages)
4 bite the bullet and raise taxes
5 siding with the Opposition
6 sticking / going to stick to her guns (on this)
7 a losing battle
8 the firing line

Unit 32

1 N  2 N  3 P  4 P  5 N  6 N

2
1 break  3 rise  5 pieces
2 wildest  4 head  6 knocked

3
1 A lot of actors fall by the wayside.
2 We must tread carefully.
3 He was successful, but it came at a price. OR His success came at a price.
4 It was beyond my wildest dreams.
5 Holly went to pieces.
6 I’m sure Jason will rise to the occasion (on the night).

4
1 tries, does  4 its toll, a heavy toll
2 shadow  5 set
3 past, through  6 line, road
Unit 33

1. hard to get to terms come
2. wiped off by earthquakes out
3. wreaking damage on havoc
4. roof caved down in
5. caught up on the forest fires in
6. started to make hold take

2. in the grip 5. caught up
2. ripped through 6. caved in
3. wreaked havoc 7. loss of life
4. swept away

3. away 4. for 7. away
2. in 5. at 8. for
3. off 6. to

4. The train came/ground to a standstill.
2. We were cut off.
3. They towed the car away to the police station.
4. I headed for the hospital.
5. They turned us away from the building.
6. The food is running low. OR We’re running low on food.
7. We’ll be cut off for the foreseeable future.
8. I was caught unawares by the snow. OR The snow caught me unawares.

Unit 35

1. D 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 S 6 D

2. butting 3. beating, point 5. back
2. missed 4. word 6. devil’s sake

4. 1. gone 4. deserve 7. evil
2. grips 5. politically
3. justifies 6. part

5. 1. can’t teach an old dog new tricks
2. get what we deserve
3. a necessary evil
4. life after death
5. gone too far
6. politically correct / PC
7. get to grips with it
8. gone/going off the rails

Unit 36

1. time/money 4. PC
2. ideas/thoughts 5. savings/experience
3. All are correct. 6. ease/rest

2. 1. wing 3. run 5. for
2. sit, notice 4. loosen 6. mind

4. 1 N 2 P 3 P 4 N 5 N 6 P
5 1 life (the shock of my life), through (sit through), nod (nod off)
2 truth (nothing could be further from the truth), jumped/buttox (jumped/buttox in)
3 wreck (a nervous wreck), pare (pare it down), sight (lose sight of)

Unit 37
1
1 F 2 T 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T
2
1 at home 5 was in his mouth
2 with open arms 6 it by ear
3 start/begin with 7 a start
4 of her 8 the word go

4 They arrived in dribs and drabs. Don't rush into a decision. We're forging ahead with the plans. The situation was left hanging for days. She rammed on for hours. The meeting ran over by half an hour. Don't hold the floor so others can't speak.

5 1 The measures will be to the detriment of patient care.
2 The chair laid down the rules of the meeting.
3 Dad rambled on about the wedding.
4 Don't rush into it / anything / a decision.
5 The money was released in dribs and drabs.
6 They threw together a video. OR They threw a video together.
7 We're forging ahead with the project.
8 I don't want to leave the situation hanging.

Unit 38
1
1 terms 3 equal 5 speaking
2 purposes 4 belief

2
1 name 3 push/pinch 5 knowledge
2 equal 4 contrary 6 intents

3 1 He told me what he thought of me in no uncertain terms. OR He told me in no uncertain terms what he thought of me.
2 It's common knowledge that they're married.

3 We can get six people round the table at a push/pinch. 'only just' fulfils the same function as 'at a push/pinch'
4 I'll sell the car as a last resort / if all else fails.
5 Strictly speaking, a tomato is a fruit.
6 Contrary to popular belief, he's not Welsh.

4 1 little (it's the least I can do)
2 and (last but not least)
3 worst (worse luck)
4 I (I'll give you that)
5 later ((a bit) late in the day)
6 have (you'll be lucky)
7 quite (it's all very well)
8 everything (for all she cares)

5 1 stay in, worse luck
2 safely, thank goodness
3 it's the (very) least I can do
4 abroad for all I care
5 is better in Spain, I'll give you that
6 be lucky to find a taxi

Unit 39
1
1 into the bargain
2 well and truly
3 ever so
4 by far / far and away / without (a) doubt
5 no wonder
6 on end

2 1 It's by far / far and away / without (a) doubt the best part of town.
2 He gave me a discount, and wrapped it up nicely into the bargain.
3 Karoly's ever such a generous guy.
4 Unfortunately the party was well and truly over when we arrived.
5 I think it's without (a) doubt / by far / far and away her most interesting novel.
6 I've been back there three times today as it is; I don't want to go again.
7 She ate some seafood that was off, so no wonder she's feeling ill.
8 It's not just any silk. It's the finest silk you can buy.

3 1 c 2 g 3 e 4 b 5 f 6 h 7 d 8 a
4 She’d give her right arm to go waterskiing.
5 They’ll have to pull out all the stops.
6 They’re up in arms over/about it.
7 I couldn’t believe my ears when I heard the news.
8 They’re streets ahead of me.
9 That boy doesn’t do a stroke of work.
10 She came down on him like a ton of bricks.
11 I avoided her like the plague.
12 These guys don’t half work hard.
13 All hell broke loose.

Unit 40

1 spare 4 death 7 facing
2 light 5 hush/cover
3 on 6 kept/hid

2
1 She wanted to spare her feelings.
2 She didn’t want to let on to people.
3 He was scared to death. OR His father scared him to death.
4 He didn’t want to lose face. OR He wanted to save face.
5 She couldn’t face up to it.

4
1 in his conscience on
2 when it comes to helping
3 I wasn’t born yesterday
4 gave the game up away
5 packs of lies a pack
6 pull the wool over my ears eyes
7 difficult to live with my aunt looked through it saw

5
1 live with
2 a pack of lies
3 have it on my conscience
4 went (as) red as a beetroot
gloss over
6 When it comes to

Unit 41

1 D 2 S 3 S 4 D 5 D

2
1 They’re neck and neck.
2 They’re gaining ground.
3 It could tip the balance in your favour.
4 The race is hotting up.

Unit 42

1 no 3 yes 5 no
2 no 4 no 6 yes

2
1 laugh 3 flat 5 beyond a joke
2 my leg 4 in cheek 6 stitches

4
1 famous last words last
2 fell off the back of a train lorry
3 but no one’s here home
4 my beautiful sleep beauty
5 What plane is he on? planet
6 as clean as mud clear
7 for reasons better known to himself best
8 a cry of nature call

5
1 I dread to think.
2 No, it was (as) clear as mud.
3 I need my beauty sleep.
4 That’s the kiss of death, then.
5 They fell off the back of a lorry.
6 What planet is he on?
7 Famous last words.
8 A cry of nature, I think/expect.

Unit 43

1 daylight
2 squeeze
3 feet

4 Both are correct.
5 past
6 for

2
1 put it past her
2 rip-off
3 robbery
4 beyond me
5 fell for / was taken in by
Unit 45
1 dig your heels in or dig in your heels
a storm in a teacup
take the bull by the horns
fall into the trap of doing sth
have a chip on your shoulder
sit tight
2 He fell into the trap of doing everything himself.
3 She’s made her choice; she must act on it.
4 He’s got a chip on his shoulder.
5 I would sit tight (and do nothing).
6 He’s digging his heels in. Or He’s digging in his heels.
7 She has to think through what might happen. Or … to think it through.
8 You’ll have your work cut out.
9 I was asked to sort out the problem. Or … sort the problem out.
10 It’s a storm in a teacup.

Unit 44
1 your wit about you wits
an event of fire the
miss out of on
stay a good chance stand
no hurt in asking harm
makes sensible to sense
note for what of
wouldn’t harm to hurt
swept
no harm
event
keep
note
missing out
times
essence

Unit 46
1 this is life that’s
write the experience out off
she’s no stopping her there’s
throws him into it himself
she looked to it took
luck’s by his side on
2 carried away
’s too short
like a duck to water
wasn’t on your side
and breathes
goes on
came, way
element
4 light 6 jumping/leaping
2 running through 7 face
3 slipped 8 putting
4 dwelling 9 out
5 live

Unit 47

1 yes 3 no 5 no
2 no 4 no 6 yes

2
1 weigh, rushing 4 turn
2 go 5 go
3 gut 6 of your convictions

4
1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 c 6 b

5
1 give 4 put 7 two evils
2 blind eye 5 toss 8 draw
3 step 6 minds

Unit 48

1 e 2 d 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 c

2
1 stick, out 4 bluff
2 get, into, no excuse 5 hedged, put
3 life, limb 6 play, split

4
1 thrives on 5 err on the side of caution
2 made up 6 shed light on
3 down to 7 a long shot
4 seek out 8 Not necessarily

5
1 seek 4 take, long
2 thrive 5 risk
3 make-up 6 run (‘take’ is also possible)

Unit 49

1
1 by 4 bag
2 Both are correct. 5 Both are correct.
3 glued 6 back

2
1 No, it’s not my idea of fun.
2 Far from it. / Quite the opposite. / Quite the reverse.
3 Yes, he’s in with a chance.

4 It was nothing to write home about / nothing to get excited about.
5 Yes, I felt hard done by.
6 Yes, but it’ll take some doing.
7 No, it’s (like) water off a duck’s back (to me).
8 Yes, it’s in the bag.

3
1 be hardly pushed hard
2 didn’t want to know it
3 make a move on
4 leave it at this that
5 push the luck your
6 must hear things be hearing

4
1 miles away
2 seeing things
3 leave it at that
4 I wouldn’t say no
5 make a move
6 his own thing
7 none too pleased / not too pleased
8 I’ll be (hard) pushed to do that

Unit 50

1 e 2 g 3 a 4 f 5 c 6 b 7 h 8 d

2
1 lucky you
2 not at all / not in the least
3 that figures
4 so far, so good
5 For get it
6 There’s nothing to it
7 just as well

3
1 So what? 4 Both are correct.
2 Both are correct. 5 Rather you than me.
3 Don’t you dare! 6 Both are correct.

4
1 You’ll be lucky.
2 No fear. / No way.
3 Don’t you dare!
4 So what? / What of it?
5 That’s your problem. / That’s not my problem.
6 Please yourself. / Rather you than me.
7 Now what? / What is it now?
8 That’s / What a load of rubbish/nonsense!

Unit 51

1
1 d 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 g 6 b 7 h 8 c
Unit 53

1. subscribe to that point of view
2. embark on/upon the new project
3. deprived of even the most
4. contend with sub-zero temperatures
5. prides herself on her cooking
6. amount to a large sum
7. engaged in discussions
8. resigned herself to a lonely existence

Unit 52

1. It means he had no permanent home.
2. It means drunk, or having had too much alcohol.
3. It means having made a formal promise to tell the truth in a court of law.
4. It means because of her experience.
5. It means noisy or violent behaviour in a public place.
6. It means he's not free or allowed to tell us.

Unit 54

1. event 4. bounds 7. under
2. right 5. For 8. discretion
3. production 6. convenience
4. A personal reference or a public notice.
5. Giving a tip.
6. On the back of a lorry, van, car, etc.
Unit 55
1 Sentences referring to a physical action are: 2, 3, 5, 6, 8.
2 tightened 4 down 7 feed
2 went 5 turn 3 spilled 6 up
3 Let’s tighten up the regulations.
The standard’s gone down in recent years.
They knocked down the shopping centre.
Just stand back and think about it.
Her life has fallen apart since she lost her job.
The towel soaked up the moisture.
They feed on insects.
4 1 stand back 2 soak up
3 falling apart 4 turn, around/round
5 feeds on 6 spill over 7 go down

Unit 56
1 1 S 2 S 3 D 4 S 5 D 6 D
2 1 the finger of suspicion 2 a fighting chance
3 a hot potato 4 a drop in the ocean
5 a conflict of interest 6 a lame duck
7 a storm in a teacup / a fuss about nothing
8 a lost cause
3 1 e 2 g 3 f 4 a 5 h 6 b 7 d 8 c
4 1 The birthday party was a roaring success.
2 The government did a U-turn on the policy.
3 He’s trying to find a happy medium.
4 We hope to get a clean bill of health.
5 There has been a coup d’état in Birania.
6 Our company needs a shot in the arm.
7 I made a terrible faux pas at the interview.
8 Letter-writing is a thing of the past.

Unit 57
1 1 S 2 D 3 S 4 D 5 D 6 D
2 1 I haven’t got the facts at my fingertips.
2 I didn’t see anything out of the ordinary.
3 We do everything by the book.
4 We arrived in the nick of time.
5 Twelve people are living under one roof. / …
   under the same roof.
6 Hundreds of workers will be on the scrapheap.
7 You are within your rights to claim for this.
8 She expressed the ideas in plain English.
3 1 in 3 out of, off 5 at
2 between 4 from, to 6 at/from, from
4 1 out of your mind / off your head
2 from head to toe
3 at a loose end
4 in all probability
5 between you and me / ourselves
6 at/from the outset / from the word go
5 1 blue 3 eyes 5 sake
2 end 4 head 6 go
6 The following phrases are informal: 2, 4, 7, 8.
7 1 at 4 on 7 on
2 of 5 in 8 on
3 in 6 on
Unit 58

1  
 1 fiddle flash  4 brush cucumber  
 2 pie nails  5 new pie  
 3 flash fiddle  6 cucumber brush  

2  
 1 it was (as) hard as nails  
 2 she was (as) cool as a cucumber  
 3 he looked/ was (as) white as a sheet  
 4 she's (as) bright as a button  
 5 he's (as) fit as a fiddle  
 6 she's (as) thin as a rake  

3  
 1 carefully  5 fits perfectly  
 2 difficult to obtain  6 well  
 3 thinking  7 difficult to find  
 4 clumsy and careless  

4  
 1 hawk  4 bull  
 2 glove  5 needle, haystack  
 3 stone  6 head, brick wall  

Unit 59

1  
 1 save  4 cheerful  7 square  
 2 bred  5 tear  8 parcel  
 3 gloom  6 proper  

2  
 1 born and bred  5 doom and gloom  
 2 wear and tear  6 bread and butter  
 3 fair and square  7 part and parcel  
 4 scrimp and save  8 cheap and cheerful  

4  
 1 leaps and bounds  4 odds and ends  
 2 short and sweet  5 hit and miss  
 3 divide and rule  6 pride and joy  

5  
 1 bits and pieces / bits and bobs / odds and ends  
 2 hit and miss  
 3 by/in leaps and bounds  
 4 short and sweet  
 5 all in all / all things considered  
 6 head to head  
 7 pride and joy  
 8 through and through  
 9 step by step  
 10 divide and rule  

Unit 60

1  
 1 A leopard cannot change its spots. / You can't teach an old dog new tricks.  
 2 Too many cooks spoil the broth. / Many hands make light work.  
 3 Strike while the iron is hot. / (There's) No time like the present.  
 4 People who live in glasshouses shouldn't throw stones. / One good turn deserves another.  

2  
 1 Nothing ventured, nothing gained.  
 2 You can't make an omelette without breaking eggs.  
 3 One good turn deserves another.  
 4 Many hands make light work.  
 5 You can't teach an old dog new tricks. ('A leopard cannot change its spots' would not be as suitable here, as the sentence is about a way of doing sth, not character.)  
 6 Too many cooks spoil the broth.  
 7 People who live in glass houses shouldn't throw stones.  
 8 Let's strike while the iron is hot.  

4  
 1 c 2 f 3 e 4 a 5 d 6 b  

5  
 1 (It's) An eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth).  
 2 Don't count your chickens (before they're hatched).  
 3 Better the devil you know (than the devil you don't).  
 4 When in Rome … (do as the Romans do).  
 5 Two's company (three's a crowd).  
 6 The grass is always greener (on the other side of the fence).
Introduction to idioms and phrasal verbs

Unit 1

1
1 foot 5 side 9 bark
2 right 6 keep 10 sinks
3 next 7 hit 11 towel
4 sore 8 stroke 12 seat

The expression in the grey squares is ‘fixed phrases’.

Unit 2

1
e 2 h 3 d 4 g 5 b 6 c 7 f 8 a

2
1 cards, chest 4 screwed
2 strike 5 heart, head
3 corner/spot 6 heart

Unit 3

1
to it
2 for pickpockets/thieves/cheats, etc.
3 on me
4 out on her
5 a warning
6 it means

2
1 put down 5 put down
2 came up 6 took against
3 ate up 7 eat in
4 puts himself down 8 talked me into going

Unit 4

1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Phrasal verb</th>
<th>Phrasal noun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>look on</td>
<td>onlooker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break out</td>
<td>outbreak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum up</td>
<td>summing-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stand by</td>
<td>bystander</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Unit 5

1
I would choose Amy (a bright spark), Syd (tough as old boots), Don (nobody’s fool), and Brenda (salt of the earth).
I wouldn’t choose the others because on a difficult demanding journey you probably wouldn’t want Ollie (an unknown quantity), or Bill (thick as two short planks, so not very bright). Alec (a creature of habit) would find it difficult not knowing what to expect every day, and Mandy (a cold fish) would not be good company. Clive (likes the sound of his own voice) might become irritating, and Isabel (doesn’t suffer fools gladly) might cause friction in the group.

2
1 mad 4 wire 7 thumb
2 temper 5 touch 8 cool
3 piece 6 hatter

Unit 6

1
1 He never lifts a finger (to help).
2 She’ll stop at nothing (to get what she wants).
3 They went to great lengths to help us.
4 Her generosity is what sets her apart.
5 Call me if you need a shoulder to cry on.
6 My sister takes me for granted.

2
1 on 4 turn, shoulder 7 way
2 up 5 hand 8 take
3 finger 6 foot
**Everyday life**

**Unit 11**

1. play 4. bail 7. bear
2. goes 5. landed 8. put
3. fork 6. fall

**Unit 12**

1. in the lap of luxury
2. (him) an arm and a leg
3. more money than sense
4. was going cheap
5. puts (some) money aside
6. set foot in/inside that nightclub

**Unit 13**

1. Groups with possible titles
   Feeling unwell: out of sorts, under the weather, off-colour
   Getting better: on the mend, pull through, take a turn for the better (‘come round’ would also be possible here)
   Lose/gain consciousness: pass out, black out, come round

**Unit 14**

1. She dropped me off at 3.00.
2. I was cutting / had cut it fine.
3. He’s running/run out of steam.
4. It’s five miles as the crow flies.
5. She drives at a snail’s pace.
Unit 15

1
1 beans 3 milk 5 butter, mouth
2 egg 4 eating 6 bitten, chew

2
1 I'm full up
2 I could eat a horse
3 settle up
4 (By) word of mouth
5 leftovers
6 grab/have a bite
7 's a couch potato
8 is making my mouth water or looks mouth-watering

Unit 16

1
9, 6, 1, 11, 5, 7, 3, 8, 10, 2

2
1 through 4 on
2 for 5 out
3 off 6 back

Unit 17

1
1 Don't throw your weight around/about.
2 I heard about it on the grapevine.
3 Don't put all your eggs in one basket.
4 When I started the job, Bill took me under his wing.
5 He got his foot in the door of the firm.
6 They gave me the boot/elbow.
7 Keep your ear to the ground.
8 He keeps his feet on the ground.

Unit 18

1
1 verge 5 eat 9 comeback
2 buyout 6 hop 10 bailout
3 stand 7 trend 11 slim
4 shore 8 win

The idiom in the grey squares is 'go to the wall'. (If a company goes to the wall, it fails because of lack of money.)

Unit 19

1
1 space 5 retrospect 9 sell
2 success 6 laurels 10 step/jump
3 corners 7 boat
4 deep 8 flooded

Events

Unit 20

1
1 had hit it
2 over
3 it out
4 (out) of it
5 a cat
6 eyebrow
7 those / these / the same lines
8 off my shoulders / off my mind

2
1 mad/crazy 4 stressed 7 deal, deal
2 save 5 in 8 tested
3 off 6 dish

Unit 21

1
1 c 2 g 3 e 4 a 5 b 6 h 7 f 8 d

2
1 It tipped down.
2 I stumbled on/ across the book.
3 We got soaked to the skin.
4 That tin opener came in handy/useful.
5 I wore myself out, or I was worn out.
6 The band went down a bomb.
7 We can make do with two assistants instead of three.
8 I have my doubts about Jeremy.

Unit 22

1
1 b 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 a

2
1 blind 6 chatted
2 bag/bundle 7 flew/flashed
3 picked 8 made
4 bags 9 cards
5 shell
Unit 23
1 pop the question 5 break the bank
2 the sky’s the limit 6 in glowing terms
3 propose a toast 7 the icing on the cake
4 speak from the heart 8 get the better of
2 peg 4 up 7 praises
2 hitch 5 day 8 day
2 hear 6 tears

Unit 24
1 pushing 4 years on
2 and bones 5 for it
3 million dollars 6 of shape
2
1 We had a whale of a time.
2 I must get in touch with Stephanie.
3 You’re under no obligation to do it.
4 I’ll be happy to see the back of him.
5 We’re just good friends.
6 I wouldn’t be seen dead in that place.
7 There’s nothing better than a day on the beach.
8 I just want to catch up on/with the latest news.

Unit 25
1 effort 6 standard/level
2 equally 7 risk (‘chance’ is also possible)
3 no 8 substitute (‘reserve’ is also possible)
4 unimportant 5 strong
2
1 off 4 par 7 off
2 contention 5 off 8 plot
3 ground 6 hook

Unit 26
1 second 4 missed 7 cater
2 lined 5 bounce 8 came
3 flash/fly 6 bridge
2
1 bear something in mind
2 a pat on the back
3 off the top of your head
4 food for thought
5 know your stuff
6 off the wall
7 eye to eye
8 off the cuff

Unit 27
1 2, 12, 3, 7, 5, 8, 4, 11, 1, 9, 6, 10, 2
2 1 stirring 4 open, overstepped
2 over, go 5 pressure, sooner
3 out, weren’t/wasn’t 6 feelings, stamp

Unit 28
1 in possession of 5 going on the offensive
2 clean up their act 6 on the lookout
3 go under cover 7 held up at gunpoint
4 lying in wait 8 in the wake of
2
1 tipped off 5 on the up
2 leading him astray 6 nip it in the bud
3 broad daylight 7 crack down
4 in the clear

Unit 29
1 stand up 7 bring
2 spread 8 turned out
3 pave 9 break up
4 made 10 pass/go off
5 cordoned off 11 board up

Unit 30
1 boils down to 1
2 the benefit of the doubt 8 to capitalize on this success
3 they wouldn’t give/budge/move an inch.
4 In the final analysis
5 put its own house in order
6 just plucked the figures
7 just didn’t add up
8 to capitalize on this success
2
1 have a field day
2 a wake-up call
3 neck and neck
4 come under fire
5 a war of words
6 stop the rot
7 climb on the bandwagon
8 quick off the mark
Unit 31
1 D 2 S 3 D 4 D 5 S 6 D 7 S 8 D
2 open 4 crying 7 ahead
2 apart 5 up 8 camps
3 step 6 side

Unit 32
1 price 4 tread 7 public
2 break 5 bounce 8 cast
3 build 6 rise 9 beyond
The word in the grey squares is 'celebrity'.

Unit 33
1 halt/standstill 4 havoc
2 risk 5 hold
3 future 6 terms
2 caught unawares
2 thick and fast
3 ground/came to a halt/standstill
4 towed away
5 snowed in
6 cut off (by the snow)
7 in the grip of

Unit 34
1 keep 4 hold 7 on
2 let 5 odds 8 picture
3 over 6 up
2 I can't take it all in.
2 Reading between the lines, he doesn't like our idea.
3 It occurred to me that she could be wrong.
4 It makes no odds to him if we lose.
5 She plays her cards close to her chest.
6 It's a secret, so keep it to yourself.

Unit 35
1 you'll take what you deserve get
2 get round the point to
3 he got off the rails went / has gone
4 Correct.
5 stop beating about the bushes bush
6 the ending justifies end
7 a necessary devil evil
8 Correct.
9 believe in live after death life
10 Correct.
11 teach an old cat new tricks dog
12 try to save the last word have
2 disagreed with her just for the sake of it
2 his behaviour is excessive
3 meant to avoid offending anyone
4 interrupting
5 to win the argument
6 accept that she has lost the argument

Unit 36
1 e 2 a 3 f 4 g 5 d 6 b 7 h 8 c
2 from the truth 5 winged
2 cross 6 spare
3 at rest/ease 7 of his life
4 wreck 8 rooting

Unit 37
1 We're on the same wavelength.
2 They welcomed me with open arms.
3 I'll play it by ear.
4 My heart was in my mouth.
5 It was a meeting of minds.
6 He just threw the dish together. Or He just threw something together.

Unit 38
1 forge ahead 5 hold the floor
2 lay down 6 detriment
3 from the word go 7 to start/begin with
4 in dribs and drabs 8 run over
The phrasal verb in the grey squares is 'ramble on'.

184 Answer key to review units
Unit 38
1 failed / not worked / not succeeded
2 annoyed/irritated
3 relieved and pleased
4 not really / not truly
5 clearly/directly
6 irritation/annoyance
7 not interested
8 annoyed/unhappy

2
1 in no uncertain terms
2 worse luck
3 at a push
4 I'll give you that
5 it's the least I can do
6 contrary to popular belief
7 thank goodness
8 to all intents and purposes

Unit 39
1 lost for words
2 It's by far the best
3 came down on me
4 so no wonder
5 to get without a doubt
6 for weeks on end
7 cartridge into the bargain
8 This is not just any / isn't just any

2
1 does a stroke
2 arms about/over
3 ever
4 a house on
5 head and shoulders
6 my right arm
7 couldn't believe my
8 pulled out all the

Human behaviour

Unit 40
1
1 up on face
2 to over comes

2
1 spare game
2 kept daylights
3 gloss live

Unit 41
1 avoid decided
2 mistake past event
3 progress level
4 risks catching up
5 succeed, difficult try
6 advantage exciting

Unit 42
1 clear as mud laugh your head off
2 a call of nature falls flat
3 pull someone's leg the kiss of death
4 tongue in cheek I dread to think

Unit 43
1 put squeeze ('get' would also be correct)
2 rip robbery
3 fair
4 all toss
5 take

Unit 44
1 miss wits bet
2 makes stand event
3 harm worth fails

Unit 45
1 a real fish on his shoulder chip
2 take the cow by the horns bull
3 digging his toes in heels bull
4 she'll fly through sail
5 a storm in a saucer tea cup
6 have your job cut out work
7 stepped into the trap fallen
8 just sit loose tight

2
1 act on
2 got over
3 pull yourself together
4 It's not the end of the world.
5 sail through the exam
6 has been off his food
7 came up
8 sort out
Unit 46
1. C 2 C 3 P 4 C 5 P 6 P 7 C 8 P
2. short, on
3. conclusions, away
4. stopping him, himself into it
5. her head in the sand, up to it

Unit 47
1. weigh up 7. courage of your
2. two minds 8. convictions
3. final/last straw 9. turned to
4. lost sight 10. toss-up
5. Rightly or 11. step in
6. rushed into

Unit 48
1. light 5. into
2. chance 6. neck
3. safe 7. put
4. bluff 8. down
2. on 4. out 7. on
2. on, of 5. at 8. up
3. at 6. out

Styles of language

Unit 49
1. he’s glued to it 5. leave it at that
2. I wouldn’t say no 6. I was miles away
3. none too pleased 7. far from it
4. it’s in the bag

Unit 50
1. I’m going to clean out the dustbin.
2. I hope I win the lottery.
3. Are you going out in the dark?
4. How’s the new job?
5. Is the climb very difficult?
6. Is it OK if I don’t come with you tonight?
7. Did you enjoy the film?

Unit 51
1. the threshold of a new era
2. no heed to my advice (‘no attention’ would also be correct but less formal)
3. down their lives for their country
4. due respect, I have to disagree with you
5. waste to the town
6. the call of duty
2. We paid our respects to the widow.
2. Delays could give rise to further problems. OR Problems could give rise to further delays.
3. I took issue with her over the expenses claim.
4. He paid tribute to the soldiers who had died.
5. We had the honour of meeting the President.
6. The country has suffered at the hands of this government. OR This country has suffered at the hands of the government.

Unit 52
1. kindly 5. oath 9. print
2. enter 6. accordance 10. letter
3. summing-up 7. fixed 11. Breach
4. undoing 8. false
The phrase in the grey squares is ‘in good faith’. (If you have done something in good faith, you have done it believing that it is right.)

Unit 53
1. 4, 8, 11, 1, 10, 6, 9, 3, 7, 5, 2
2. dwell
2. Both are correct, enlarge
3. resigned, contend
4. deprived, both are correct
5. call, adhere (NOT ‘abide to’)
Unit 54
1
1 F. It is the title of a newspaper section where jobs are advertised.
2 F. It means according to what you decide or want to do.
3 T
4 F. It means you are not allowed to go in a particular place.
5 F. It means 'or nearest offer'.
6 T

Types of idiom

Unit 55
1
1 fall apart 5 spill over
2 wrap sth up 6 fall apart
3 stand back 7 wrap sth up
4 stand back 8 spill over
2
1 tighten 6 knocked ('pulled' is also possible)
2 turn 7 gone
3 stand 8 wrapped
4 feed
5 spilled

Unit 56
1
1 f 2 e 3 g 4 a 5 d 6 c 7 h 8 b
2
1 success 4 carpet 7 conflict
2 seal 5 finger 8 storm
3 shot 6 potato
3
1 black 4 golden 7 fuss
2 white 5 red 8 lost
3 thing 6 green

Unit 57
1
These noun phrases do not follow the words in bold:
1 c all probability 4 a their heart
2 b closed doors 5 c nick of time
3 d the blue
2
1 closed 4 last 7 deep
2 same 5 old 8 good
3 plain 6 loose
3
1 too difficult for you to understand
2 working well
3 unusual
4 in trouble
5 nothing particular to do
6 crazy
7 in good condition
8 true from the beginning

Unit 58
1
1 cake rake 5 hall wall
2 rails nails 6 lead read
3 hits fits 7 bag rag
4 flood blood 8 sheep sheet
2
1 like wildfire
2 a, in a haystack
3 as new
4 as a cucumber
5 as a button
6 as pie
7 like a hawk
8 as a flash

Unit 59
1
5, 8, 3, 6, 11, 1, 9, 10, 4, 7, 2
2
1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 F 7 T 8 F
9 T 10 T

Unit 60
1
1 Its spots.
2 The iron.
3 New tricks.
4 They spoil the broth.
5 They make light work.
6 Throw stones.
2
1 Don't count your chickens
2 Two's company
3 When in Rome
4 The spirit's willing
5 Better the devil you know
6 The grass is always greener
7 A bird in the hand
8 An eye for an eye
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Title of spotlight box</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4A</td>
<td>passer-by, bystander, onlooker</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5A</td>
<td>mad</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6B</td>
<td>Persuading people</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7B</td>
<td>Expressing wishes</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8A</td>
<td>on top of sb/sth</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9B</td>
<td>side</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11B</td>
<td>put sb off (sth)</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12A</td>
<td>a matter of …</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12B</td>
<td>in arrears (with sth)</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13B</td>
<td>Sayings</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14B</td>
<td>Literal meanings</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15A</td>
<td>Idioms with horse</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Not understanding</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17B</td>
<td>Being dismissed</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18B</td>
<td>Food and dieting metaphors</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>a big deal, a big thing</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21A</td>
<td>put sth up, set sth up</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21B</td>
<td>Describing successful events</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>eye</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Idioms with day</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25A</td>
<td>Expressions with par</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25B</td>
<td>ease off</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Idioms with off</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27B</td>
<td>Sayings about truth</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29B</td>
<td>Communicating information</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30B</td>
<td>wake-up call</td>
<td>81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31B</td>
<td>Literal meanings</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32A</td>
<td>build up</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34A</td>
<td>Giving people information</td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34B</td>
<td>Keeping information back</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36B</td>
<td>of your life</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37A</td>
<td>to start with</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40A</td>
<td>Hiding information</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41A</td>
<td>Idioms from horse racing</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41B</td>
<td>a close thing/shave/call</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44A</td>
<td>Advice</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45A</td>
<td>Meanings of sort sth out</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45B</td>
<td>Meanings of come up</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46A</td>
<td>Sayings about life</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47A</td>
<td>go for sth</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47B</td>
<td>Idioms with draw</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48B</td>
<td>Idioms with risk</td>
<td>125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49B</td>
<td>thing(s)</td>
<td>131</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52B</td>
<td>The law</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>verb + on/upon</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56B</td>
<td>French phrases</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57B</td>
<td>Phrases with head</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57C</td>
<td>hands</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58A</td>
<td>Similes</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59A</td>
<td>Sound patterns</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59B</td>
<td>Repetition</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Word list / Index

Here is an index of all the idioms and phrasal verbs, in alphabetical order according to the first word. The numbers are unit numbers. (If you cannot remember the first word, see the list of key words on page 202.)

(as) bright as a button 58
(as) clear as mud 42
(as) cool as a cucumber 58
(as) daft as a brush 58
(as) easy as pie 58
(as) fit as a fiddle 58
(as) good as new 58
(as) hard as nails 58
(as) mad as a hatter 5
(as) miserable as sin 8
(as) quick as a flash 58
(as) thick as two short planks 5
(as) thin as a rake 58
(as) tough as old boots 5
(as) white as a sheet 58
abide by sth 52, 53
account for sth 8
act on sth 45
add sth on (to sth) 11
add up 30
add-on 11
adhere to sth 53
all (other) things being equal 38
all along 26
all hell breaks loose 39
all in all 59
all things considered 59
all very well 38
allude to sth 53
among those / the same lines 20
amount to sth 53
an eye for an eye (and a tooth for a tooth) 60
an unknown quantity 5
and the like 22
answer to sb (for sth) 7
apply yourself 16
argue the toss 43
as a last resort 38, 44
as a matter of routine/course 16
as far as I can/could tell 22
as I see it 1
as it is 39
as the crow flies 14
as time goes by 11
at a loose end 57
at a price 32
at a push/pinch 38
at a snail's pace 14
at a/the crossroads 57
at all costs 35
at all times 44
at any cost/price 35
at cross purposes 36
at gunpoint 28
at home 37
at liberty (to do sth) 52
at risk (of/from sth) 33, 48
at sb's discretion 54
at the eleventh hour 18
at the end of the day 45
at the end of your tether 9
at the hands of sb 51
at the outset 57
at your earliest convenience 54
at your fingertips 57
at your wits' end 9
avoid sb like the plague 39
back down (on sth) 29, 35
back sb/sth up 4, 8
backup 4
a bad/sticky patch 7
bags of sth 22
bail sb out 11, 18
bailout 18
barking (mad) 5
be (all) skin and bones 24
be (hard) pushed to do sth 1, 49
be (like) banging your head against a brick wall 58
be a toss-up 47
be a weight off your shoulders/mind 20
be all for sth / for doing sth 43
be at an end 51
be at loggerheads 31
be at odds with sth 34
be beyond sb 43
be born and bred . . . 59
be common knowledge 38
be cut off 33
be dead set against sth 43
be down to sb/sth 48
be dying to do sth / for sth 9
be engaged in sth 53
be full up 15
be glad to see the back of sb 24
be glued to sth 49
be going strong 19
be hard pressed/put/pushed to do sth 1
be hard to beat 41
be in a (terrible) state 45  
be in sb's debt 51  
be in stitches 42  
be in the bag 49  
be in the doldrums 18  
be in the driving seat 2  
be in the firing line 31  
be in the right place at the right time 19  
be in the saddle 2  
be in the same boat 44  
be in two minds (about sth / doing sth) 47  
be in with a chance (of doing sth) 49  
be in your element 46  
be in / get (sb) into deep water 19  
be in / get (sb) into hot water 57  
be in/out of the running (for sth) 25  
be left over (from sth) 4, 15  
be like a bull in a china shop 58  
be like a red rag to a bull 58  
be like getting blood out of a stone 58  
be like looking for a needle in a haystack 58  
be locked in battle / a dispute, etc. 31  
be lost for words 39  
be made for each other 7  
be miles away 49  
be murder 14  
be off your food 45  
be on sb's side 9  
be on the cards 22  
be on the lookout for sb/sth 28  
be on the same wavelength 2, 37  
be out of shape 24  
be part and parcel (of sth) 59  
be pushing 40, 50, etc. 24  
be sb's undoing 52  
be seeing/hearing things 49  
be snowed in 33  
be struck by sb/sth 37  
be taken in by sth 43  
be there for sb 6  
(be) within your rights 57  
be worse/better off 11  
be/feel hard done by 49  
be/feel out of sorts 13  
be/get caught up in sth 12, 33  
be/get/go beyond a joke 42  
bear fruit 11  
bear sth in mind 26  
bear the brunt of sth 27  
beat a hasty retreat 2  
beat about the bush 35  
beauty sleep 42  
behind closed doors 57  
below par 25  
better safe than sorry 13  
better the devil you know (than the devil you don't) 60  
between ourselves 57  
between you and me 57  
beyond the call of duty 51  
beyond your wildest dreams 32  
a/the big day 23  
a big deal 20  
a bird in the hand (is worth two in the bush) 60  
birds of a feather (flock together) 60  
a bit) late in the day 38  
a bite (to eat) 15  
bite off more than you can chew 15  
bite the bullet 2, 31  
bits and pieces/bobs 59  
black eye 56  
black market 56  
black out 13  
black sheep (of the family) 56  
blind date 22  
block sb/sth in 14  
blow over 27  
blow sth (up) out of (all) proportion 27  
board sth up 29  
bode well/ill for sb/sth 30  
boil down to sth 30  
bottle up your feelings/emotions 9  
bounce back (from sth) 32  
bounce ideas around 26  
bounce ideas off sb 26  
branch out (into sth) 18  
brack of the peace 52  
bread and butter 59  
break away from sb/sth 4  
brake down (in tears) 23  
brake out = start suddenly 4  
brake out (of sth) = escape from prison 4  
brake ranks 31  
brake sb's heart 2  
brake sth up 29  
brake the bank 23  
brake up (with sb) 7  
brakeaway 4  
brakedown 4  
brake-up 7  
bridge the gap/gulf/divide (between ...) 26  
a bright spark 5  
bring/put an end to sth 29  
bring out the best/worst in sb 24  
bring sb in 18  
bring sth out 24  
broad daylight 28  
brush sb/sth aside 25  
buck the trend 18  
build sth up 32  
build up sb's hopes 32
a bundle/bag of nerves 22
come back 18
burn sth to a crisp/cinder 15
come down on sb like a ton of bricks 39
burst in on sb 3
come down to sth 41
bury your head in the sand 46
come down with sth 13
butt in 35, 36
come in all shapes and sizes 1
butter wouldn’t melt (in sb’s mouth) 15
come in handy/useful 21
buy sb out 18
come off worse 25
buy sth in 20
come on 16
buyout 18
come out in sth 13
by far 39
come out in/into the open 27
by the book 57
come out of your shell 22
by virtue of 52
come out on top 41
by word of mouth 15
come round 13
bystander 4
come to a standstill/halt 33
call for sb 22
come to light 27, 40
call of nature 42
come to sth 11
call on sb to do sth 29
come to terms with sth 33
call on/upon sb 53
come to grips with sth 35
call sb’s bluff 48
come up = (of the sun) rise 3
calm (sb) down 9
come up = be chosen 45
can ill afford (to do) sth 31
come up = be mentioned or discussed 45
can’t afford to save your life 20
come up = happen 45
can’t make head or tail of sth 16
capitalize on sth 30
can’t do sth to save your life 20
come/be under fire 30
cast a shadow (over sth) 32
come/go down with sth 13
cast doubt(s) on sth 27
comeback 18
cast light on sth 48
conflict of interest 56
catch sb on the hop 18
contend with sth 53
catch sb unaware 33
contrary to popular belief 38
catch up (with/on sb/sth) = find out about news 24
catch up = move closer to level of others 41
catch up with sb = begin to have an effect on sb 24
catch up with sth 45

cater for sth 26
cave in (on sb/sth) 33

cave in 10
case of a lifetime 56

clean bill of health 56
chat away 22
clean up your act 28
cheap and cheerful 59
clear (sth) up 20
couch potato 15
clear sb’s name 28
cound on sb to do sth 3
clear the air 7
couple sth with sth 32
climb down 4
coupled with 32
climb on the/any bandwagon 30
cover sth up 4, 40
climb down 4
cover-up 4, 40
climb down (on sth/sb) 28

crack down 28

crack down (on sth/sb) 28

cut corners 19
cut in (on sb/sth) 14

cut it/things fine 14

cut out the middleman 19

cut sth out 16

cut your losses 19

day by day 59

da dark horse 41
daylight robbery 43
deal sth out = distribute cards 10
deal sth out = give a punishment 10
deep down 5
delude yourself (into doing sth) 19
deprive sb/sth of sth 53
dig deep 25
dig your heels in 45
dish (sth) up 20
dispense with sb’s services 53
dispose of sth/sb 53
distance yourself from sth 8
divide and rule 59
do as you please 7
do sb out of sth 3
do sth at your own risk 48
do sth up 18
do your own thing 49
do/try your utmost 32
don’t count your chickens (before they’re hatched) 60
don’t look now 24
don’t you dare 50
doom and gloom 59
double up/over 10
down in the dumps 9
down the road 14
draw a line under sth 47
draw lots 47
draw on sth 36
draw the line (at sth) 47
a dream come true 41
drive a wedge between people 7
a drop in the ocean 56
drop sb off 14
dwell on/upon sth 46, 53
ease off = become less strong 25
ease off = try less hard 25
easier said than done 9
eat in/up/into 3
eat into sth 3, 18
eat like a bird 15
eat like a horse 15, 58
eat sth up 3
embark on/upon sth 53
engage in sth 53
enlarge on/upon sth 53
enter into sth 52
err on the side of caution 11, 48
ever such (a) / ever so 39
face up to sth 40, 46
fair and square 59
fair enough 43
fall apart = (of a relationship) fail 55
fall apart = break into pieces 55
fall back on sth 11
fall by the wayside 32
fall flat 42
fall for sth 43
fall into the trap (of doing sth) 45
fall off 18
fall off the back of a lorry 42
fall through 18
false economy 19
famous last words 42
far and away 39
far from it 49
a faux pas 56
feedback 26
feed sth back (to sb) 26
feed on sth = (of an animal) eat 55
feed on sth = become stronger 55
(feel) at home 37
feel for sb 44
feel/look like death warmed up 13
fence sb in 29
fight a losing battle 31
fight back 25
fight like cat and dog 8
fight your way (through/past sb/sth) 32
fighting chance 56
finger of suspicion 56
finish with sb 7, 45
fit (sb) like a glove 58
flag sb down 14
flare up = (of a fire) burn more brightly 9
flare up = become angry 9
flash by 22, 26
flood the market 19
fly by 22, 26
food for thought 26
for reasons best known to himself/herself/etc. 42
for a start 37
for all sb cares 38
for external use only 53
for no apparent reason 9
for old times’ sake 57
for sale 54
for the foreseeable future 33
for the sake of it 35
for what it’s worth 44
forge ahead (with sth) 37, 41
forget it 50
fork sth out (on sth) 11
frame of mind 45
free (sb/sth) up 31
from all walks of life 29
from head to toe 57
from the (bottom of your) heart 23
government 57
from/at the outset 57
go (at the word) go 37, 57
full of beans 15
(further) down the road 14
fuss about nothing 56

gain ground (on sb) 25, 41
gamble on sth/sth 25
get (hold of) the wrong end of the stick 34
get a/your foot in the door 17
get away 4
get away with murder 8
get behind with sth 12
get carried away 46
get from A to B 14
get hitched 7
get in touch (with sb) 24
get on like a house on fire 39
get out 32
get out of bed on the wrong side 1
get over sth 45
get round sb 6
get round to (doing) sth 22
get sb's back up 34
get (sb) into hot water 57
get sth across 29
get the better of sb 23
get the picture 34
get the push/boot/elbow 17
get to grips with sth 35
get to the point 35
get what you deserve 35
get worked up (about sth) 44
get your hands on sth 11
get your message across 29
get your own way 6
get your wires crossed 2
get yourself into sth 48
get away 4
give (sb/sth) the green light 14
give it your all 41
give rise to sth 51
give sb the benefit of the doubt 30
give sth a miss 47
give sth your best shot 41
give sth/sth away 34
give the game away 40
give your right arm (to do sth) 7, 39
give/lend (sb) a helping hand 6
gloss over sth 40
go ahead 29
go all out for sth 25
go along (in as you go along) 20
go away 13, 27
go down = become worse in quality 55
go down = move to a lower position 55
go down = stop working temporarily 55
go down with sth 13
go down a bomb/storm 21
go down that road 14
go down well 21
go downhill 13
go easy on sth 21
go for it! 24
go for sth = be sold for sth 47
go for sth = choose sth 47
go for sth = try to get sth 47
go it alone 17
go like a dream 58
go off (without a hitch) 23, 29
go off the deep end 9
go off the rails 14, 35
go on 4
go on and on (about sth) 23
go on the offensive 28
go OTT 20
go over the top 20
go out of your way to do sth 6
go over your head 16
go (as) red as a beetroot 40
go round 18
(go through) a bad/sticky patch 7
go to great/any lengths (to do sth) 6, 27
go to pieces 32
go to sb's head 32
go to the wall 18
go too far 27, 35
go/be under cover 28
go with sth 47
go-ahead 29
going cheap 12
going rate (for sth) 19
golden opportunity 56
grab/have a bite to eat 15
green belt 56
green fingers 56
grind to a standstill/halt 33
gut feeling/reaction/instinct 47
hand sth out 10
hang (on) in there 1
hang in the balance 18, 31
hang over sb 45
happy medium 56
hatchet job (on sb/sth) 56
have a bee in your bonnet 43
have a chip on your shoulder 2, 45
have a field day 30
have a finger in every pie 15
have/keep a foot in both camps 31
have a go at sb 9
have a good laugh (about sth) 42
have a lot/something/little/nothing to show for sth 16
have a mind of your own 47
have a quick temper 5
have a whale of a time 24
have egg on your face 15
have things/it (all) your own way 6
have mixed feelings about sth/sb 27
have money/time, etc. to play with 11
have more money than sense 12
have nothing to lose 24
have sb eating out of your hand 15
have sb on 42
have sb’s (best) interests at heart 6
have sth on your conscience 40
have sth up your sleeve 2, 41
have sth/sb in mind 22
have the honour of doing sth 51
have the last/final word (on sth) 35
have your doubts about sth 21
have your head screwed on 2
have your work cut out 45
have/lack the courage of your convictions 47
having said that 1
head for sth 33
head and shoulders above sb 39
head start 56
head to head 59
hedge your bets 48
hem sb in 29
hit and miss 59
hit back 25
hit the ground running 1
hold off 21
hold on/onto sth 11
hold sb back 7, 16
hold sb/sth up 28
hold sth against sb 3
hold sth together 6
hold sway 51
hold the floor 37
hold your cards close to your chest 2, 34
hold your own (against sb) 25
hopping mad 5
(all) hot and bothered 22
hot potato 56
hot up 41
hours/days/weeks on end 39
a household name 27
hush sth up 40
I could eat a horse 15
I couldn't believe my ears 39
I dread to think 42
I thought as much 1
I wasn't born yesterday 40
I wouldn't be seen dead 24
I wouldn't put it past sb (to do sth) 43
I wouldn't say no 49
I'd (far) sooner do sth 7
I'd give anything to do / for sth 7
I'll give you that 38
if all else fails 38, 44
if it weren't/wasn't for sb/sth 27
if my memory serves me correctly/well/right 1
impact on sb/sth 53
impinge on/upon sth/sb 53
in a good/bad light 46
in a rut 57
in a tight corner/spot 2
in accordance with sth 52
in all probability 57
in arrears 12
(in) broad daylight 28
in conjunction with 52
in contention (for sth) 25
in dribs and drabs 37
in glowing terms 23
in good faith 52
in good/excellent/bad nick 57
in large part/measure 51
in name only 38
in no uncertain terms 38
in plain English 57
in possession of sth 28
in question 52
in retrospect 19
in stitches 42
in the balance 41
in the clear 28
in the doghouse 57
in the event 29
in the event of sth 44, 54
in the final analysis 30
in the grip of sth 33
in the heat of the moment 7
in the know 26
(in) the lap of luxury 12
in the nick of time 57
in the public eye 32
in the same boat 1
in the wake of sth 28
in top gear 14
in your heart (of hearts) 57
in/by leaps and bounds 16, 59
in/within a short space of time 19
intake 4
into the bargain 39
it does / would do no harm to do sth 44
it is not for want/lack of trying 16
it is touch-and-go (whether) 13
it makes no odds 34
it serves sb right (for doing sth) 1
it stands to reason (that) 44
it wouldn't hurt to do sth 44
it's/that's all very well (for sb) (to do sth) 38
(it's/that's) just as well = it's lucky sth happened 50
it's no big deal 20
it's not every day 23
it's the (very) least I can do 38
it's the same old story 12
join/combine forces (with sb) 29
jump down sb's throat 43
jump in 36
jump to conclusions 46
jump/climb on the/any bandwagon 30
just (good) friends 24
just like that 39
keel over 13
keep a tight rein on sth/sb 2
keep an eye on sth/sb 21
keep in trim 24
keep in with sb 17
keep sb from doing sth 44
keep sb in the dark 34
keep sb in the picture 34
keep sb posted (about/on sth) 34
keep sth from sb 40
keep sth to yourself 29, 34
keep sth/sb in check 9
keep up with the Joneses 1
keep your cards close to your chest 2, 34
keep your distance 54
keep your ear to the ground 17
keep your feet on the ground 17
keep your head 44
keep your options open 17
keep your wits about you 44
keep/stay one step/jump ahead of sb 19
kick off 21
knock sb down 32
knock sb out (of sth) 4
knock sth down = destroy 55
knock sth down = reduce the price 55
knockout 4
know your stuff 26
lame duck 56
land on your feet 1
land sb/yourself in sth 11
last but not least 38
late in the day 38
laugh your head off 42
lavish sth on sb 8
lay sth down 37
lay down your life (for sb/sth) 51
lay waste to sth 51
lay/get your hands on sth 11
lead sb astray 28
leak out 27, 32
leap to conclusions 46
learn the ropes 2
leave it at that 49
leave sb out 8
leave sth behind 21
leave sth hanging 37
leftover 4
leftovers 4, 15
a leopard cannot change its spots 60
let alone 43
let on (to sb about sth) 34, 40
let's be fair 43
let sb down 7
let sb in on sth 34
let sb off (with sth) 3
let sb off the hook 25
let sth down 10
let your heart rule your head 2
lie in wait (for sb) 28
life after death 35
life goes on 46
life's too short 46
like crazy 20
like mad 20
like/love the sound of your own voice 5
(like) water off a duck's back 49
line sb/sth up 26
little by little 59
live and breathe sth 46
live beyond your means 12
live from hand to mouth 12
live in each other's pockets 7
live life in the fast lane 12
live up to sth 46
a live wire 5
live with sth 40
locked in battle/dispute, etc. 31
a long shot 48
a long way to go 25
look a million dollars 24
look back (on sth) 41
look like a bomb has hit it 20
look on 4
look sb in the eye 22
look set to run and run 30
look who's here! 24
loosen sb up 36
loosen up 36
lose face 40
lose sight of sth 36, 47
lose the plot 25
lose your head 2
lose your life 33
loss of life 33
lost cause 56
love the sound of your own voice 5
luck is on your side 46
lucky you 50
mad keen on sb/sth 5
make a big deal/thing (out) of sth 20
make a move 49
make a name for yourself 17
make a point of doing sth 8
make an impression (on sb) 22
make do (with sth) 21
make for sth 33
make of sth/sb 37
make off with sth 28
make or break sb/sth 32
make-or-break A(J)D 32
make sb sit up (and take notice) 36
make sb's day 23
make sense (to do sth) 44
make sth up 48
make your mouth water 15
make your way (to somewhere) 29
make-up 48
a man/woman of his/her word 5
management buyout 18
many hands make light work 60
mark sb down 16
a matter of minutes/days etc. 12
meet sb halfway 7, 31
a meeting of minds 37
mess sb around/about 7
miles from anywhere 14
miss out (on sth) 26, 44
miss the boat 19
miss the point 35
money is no object 12
 mop sth up = clear up a spilt liquid 10
 mop sth up = complete sth by dealing with details 10
more than likely/happy/ready, etc. 1
mouthwatering 15
move up a gear 14
mud sticks 27
mull sth over 34
my heart was in my mouth 37
my heart sank 1
a nasty piece of work 5
a necessary evil 35
neck and neck 30, 41
a nervous wreck 36
next to nothing 16
night after night 16
nip sth in the bud 28
no disrespect (to sb) 43
no fear 50
no laughing matter 42
no room to swing a cat 20
no time like the present 60
no way 50
no wonder 39
nobody's/no fool 5
nod off 36
none/not too pleased 49
not at all 50
not be able to take your eyes off sb 22
not be your idea of fun 49
not bear thinking about 7
(not) by any stretch of the imagination 44
not come cheap 12
not do a stroke of work 1, 39
not give/budge/move an inch 30
not half 39
not have the heart to do sth 2
not hear of sth 23
not in the least 50
not just any 39
not lift a finger (to do sth) 6
not necessarily 48
not out of the woods 1
not ring true 27
not see eye to eye with sb 26
not suffer fools gladly 5
not take kindly to sth/sb 52
not the end of the world 45
not want to know 49
nothing but 23
nothing could be further from the truth 36
nothing to get excited about 49
nothing to it 50
nothing to write home about 49
nothing ventured, nothing gained 60
now what? 50
o.n.o. (or nearest offer) 54
occur to sb 34
odds and ends 59
of no fixed abode 52
of the essence 44
of your life 36
of your own free will 52
off colour 13
off the cuff 26
off the peg 23
off the record 27
off the road 57
off the shelf 23
off the top of your head 26
off the wall 26
off your hands 57
off your head 57
off your own bat 11
off-putting 4
on a need-to-know basis 34
on a par with sb 25
on an even keel 9
on edge 57
on hand 57
on its last legs 57
on production of sth 54
on tenterhooks 57
on the bench 25
on the blink 57
on the breadline 11
on the grapevine 17
on the mend 13
on the record 27
on the right/wrong track 2
on the road 57
on the ropes 2
on the scrapheap 57
on the surface 5
on the threshold of sth 51
on the up 28
on the verge of (doing) sth 18
on those/the same lines 20
on top of sb/sth 8
on top of the world 9
one good turn deserves another 60
ongoing 4
onlooker 4
open the floodgates (to sth) 31
open up (to sb) 34
open your eyes (to sth) 26
out of bounds (to/for sb) 54
out of hand 57
out of step (with sb) 31
out of the blue 57
out of the frying pan (and) into the fire 15
out of the ordinary 57
out of thin air 30
out of your mind 57
outbreak 4
outspoken 4
over your head 57
overstep the mark 27
a pack of lies 40
pan out 46
pare sth down 36
part of the furniture 17
pass by sb/sth 4
pass off 29
pass out 13
pass sth on (to sb) 17
passer-by 4
a pat on the back 26
pave the way (for sb/sth) 29
pay (no) heed to sb/sth 51
pay off 19, 25
pay out 11
pay sth off 11
pay the price for (doing) sth 41
pay tribute to sb 51
pay your (own) way 11
pay your respects (to sb) 51
PC 35
people (who live) in glass houses shouldn't throw stones 60
phase sth in/out 28
pick at sth 15
pick on sb 6
pick sb up 22
pick sth up 13
pick up on sth 34
pile up 7
pin (all) your hopes on sth/sb 17
pitch in (with sb/sth) 20
play (it) safe 41, 48
play a part in sth 35
(play) a practical joke (on sb) 42
play devil's advocate 35
play it by ear 37
play it cool 5
play sb off against sb 19
play/hold/keep your cards close to your chest 2, 34
please find enclosed 53
please yourself (used to tell sb you are annoyed) 50
please yourself = do whatever you like 7
plough sth back (in/into sth) 19
pluck sth out of the air 30
poles apart 31
polish sth off 15
political correctness 35
politically correct (PC) 35
pop the question 23
pour your heart out (to sb) 9
a practical joke 42
press ahead (with sth) 29, 31
press charges (against sb) 28
press on (with sth) 31
pretty much/well 11
pride yourself on sth / on doing sth 53
prim and proper 59
prop sth up = support sth in difficulty 10, 15
prop sth up = support sth physically 10
propose a toast 23
pull out (of sth) 18, 21
pull out all the stops 39
pull over 14
pull sb's leg 42
pull sth off 20, 41
pull the wool over sb's eyes 40
pull the other one 40
pull through 13
pull your socks up 16
pull yourself together 45
pull/tear stb/sth to pieces/shreds 43
pull-out 18
push ahead 31
push sb around 6
push your luck 49
put a brave face on sth 1
put all your eggs in one basket 17
put down (a deposit) 12
put down = (of a plane) land 3
put lives at risk 33
put money on sth 48
put pressure on sb 27
put sb down for sth 3
put sth down to sth 3
put sb in the picture 34
put sb off (sth) = make sb dislike sth 4, 11
put sb off = cancel an arrangement 11
put sb off = disturb/distract sb 11
put sb on a pedestal 8
put sb up to sth 3
put sth aside 12
put sth down = kill an old or sick animal 3
put sth down = write sth 3
put sth on = provide or produce 21
put sth up = build sth 21
put sth/sb on the map 14
put the word out (about sth) 29
put up with sb/sth 47
put years on sb 24
put your (own) house in order 30
put your foot down 6
put your foot in it 1
put your mind at rest/ease 36
put yourself/sb down 3, 46
quick/slow off the mark 30
quite the opposite/reverse 49
rained off 25
raise an eyebrow at sth 20
ramble on 37
rather you/him, etc. than me 50
(reach) the end of the line/road 14, 32
read between the lines 34
read sb like a book 58
ready when you are 50
a recipe for disaster 45
red carpet (treatment) 56
red tape 56
reserve the right to do sth 54
resign yourself to sth 53
rest assured that 1
rest on your laurels 19
result in sth 8
(right) from the word go 37, 57
(right) from/at the outset 57
rightly or wrongly 47
rip sb off 43
rip through sth 33
a rip-off 43
rise to the occasion 32
risk life and limb 48
risk your neck 48
a roaring success 19, 56
roll sth up 10
roll up 21
roll your sleeves up 10
root for sb 36
rub sb up the wrong way 9
run and run 30
run low (on sth) 33
run out of steam 14
run over 37
run sth by sb 36
run the risk of sth 48
run through sth 46
run through your mind 46
a running battle 31
rush around/round 22
rush into sth 37, 47
sail through sth 45
save face 40
sb's bark is worse than their bite 1
sb's face doesn't fit 17
sb's pride and joy 59
scare sb to death 40
scare the life/living daylight's out of sb 40
scared to death 40
scrape through sth 16
scream/shout/laugh your head off 9, 42
screw sth up = make a mess of sth 10
screw sth up = squeeze sth into a ball 10
scrimp and save 59
seal of approval 56
second to none 26
see through sb/sth 40
seek out sth/sb 48
sell up 19
set foot in/on/inside somewhere 12
set in 36
set sb apart (from sb) 6
set sb back 32
set sth up = place sth somewhere 21
set sth up = make equipment ready to use 36
set the pace 41
set the place alight 21
set the seal on sth 51
setback 32
settle up (with sb) 15
shed/cast/throw light on sth 48
shore sth up 10, 18
short and sweet 59
a shot in the arm 56
a shoulder to cry on 6
shout your head off 9, 42
show sb around 3
show signs of sth 16
shut sb up 23
shut sth down 29
shutdown 29
sick to death of sth/sb 43
sick to the back teeth of sth/sb 43
side with sb 9, 31
sing sb's praises 23
sit in 29
sit-in 29
sit through sth 36
sit tight 45
situations vacant 54
slim down 18
slip up 41, 46
slip-up 41, 46
snap out of it 22
so far so good 50
so what? 50
soak sth up = absorb sth into the senses 55
soak sth up = absorb a liquid 55
soaked to the skin 21
a soft touch 5
a sore point 1
sort out / separate the sheep from the goats 1
sort sth out = arrange sth 45
sort sth out = deal successfully with sth 45
sort sth out = tidy sth 45
spare sb's feelings 40
(speak) from the heart 23
speak out (against sth) 4, 27
spill over = (of emotions) come out 55
spill over = overflow 55
spill over = spread and affect sth else 55
the spirit is willing (but the flesh is weak) 60
splash out (on sth) 12
split sth up 48
spread like wildfire 58
spread sth out 10
spread the word 29
squeezed out 8
squeeze sth out of sb 43
stamp sth out 27
stand a chance of (doing) sth 44
stand aside 18
stand back = move away from sth 55
stand back = think about a situation 55
stand by 4
stand firm 31
stand out against sth 3
stand up for sth/sb 29
starve sb/sth of sth 8
step by step 59
step in 47
step sth up 28
stick sth out = continue to do sth to the end 10
stick sth out = extend sth further than sth else 10
stick to your guns 31
stick up for sb/yourself 6
stick your neck out 48
stir sth up = cause problems 27
stir sth up = make people feel strong emotions 9
stop at nothing 6
stop the rot 30
store sth up 7
a storm in a teacup 45, 56
streets ahead of sb 39
(straight) from the horse's mouth 57
stress sb out 20
stressed out 20
strictly speaking 38
strike while the iron is hot 2, 60
stumble on/across sth 21
subject sb to sth 53
subscribe to sth 53
sum up 4, 52
summing-up 4, 52
sure of yourself 6
sweep sb along 44
sweep sth away 33
sweep sth under the carpet 27, 40
swell up 13
take a back seat 1
take a chance (on sth) 48
take a heavy toll (on sb/sth) 32
take a turn for the worse/better 13
take against sb/sth 3
take (a) hold 33
take issue with sth/sb (over/about sth) 51
take it for granted (that . . . ) 6
take it/sth personally 1
take its toll (on sb/sth) 32
take note (of sth) 44
take over (from sb) 20
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>take sb for granted 6, 8</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sb under your wing 17</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sides 9</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take some beating 41</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take some doing 17, 49</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth in = understand sth 34</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth in = absorb sth into the body 4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth in = accept sth as real and true 9</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth/things in your stride 17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth out on sb 43</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth over 18</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth personally 43</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth to heart 2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take sth up 10</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take the bull by the horns 45</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take the easy way out 21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take the liberty of doing sth 52</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take the plunge 24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take the wind out of sb's sails 2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take things/it easy 13</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take to sth like a duck to water 46</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take up sth 20</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>take years off sb 24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>takeover 18</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(talk) at cross purposes 36</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk sb into / out of (doing) sth 3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear sb/sth to pieces/shreds 43</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>talk sth up 30</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tear sth up 3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tell sb off 16</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank goodness 38</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thank your lucky stars 6</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanks to sb/sth 18</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that figures 50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that's a load of rubbish/nonsense 50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that's an idea 50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that's life 46</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that's not my problem 50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>that's your/his/her, etc. problem 50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the best/greatest thing since sliced bread 15</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the end of the line/road 14, 32</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the end justifies the means 35</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the final/last straw 1, 47</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the grass is always greener (on the other side of the fence) 60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the high/low point of sth 21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the icing on the cake 23</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the kiss of death 42</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the lap of luxury 12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the last I heard 12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the lesser of two evils 47</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the letter of the law 52</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the lights are on but no one's / nobody's home 42</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the next thing I knew 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the salt of the earth 5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the scum of the earth 5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the sky's the limit 23</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the small print 52</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the sooner the better 27</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the spirit of the law 52</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the straw that broke the camel's back 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the tricks of the trade 17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the way I see it 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's no excuse for sth 48</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's little/no love lost between them 8</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's no harm in doing sth 44</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's no smoke without fire 27</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's no stopping you/him, etc. 46</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(there's) no time like the present 60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(there's) nothing to it 50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's nothing worse/better/more exciting, etc. than 24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>there's safety in numbers 24</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>therein lies sth 51</td>
<td>51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thick and fast 33</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thing of the past 56</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think nothing of sth / doing sth 12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think sth out 26</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>think sth through 45</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thrills and spills 56</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thrive on sth 48</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through and through 59</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw in the towel 1</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw light on sth 48</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw sth away 4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw sth together 37</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw up 13</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw your weight around/about 17</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throw yourself into sth 46</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>throwaway 4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tick over (of a business) 14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tick over (of a car) 14</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tie the knot 7</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tighten sth up = make rules stricter 28, 55</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tighten sth up = make sth tighter 55</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time/money/room, etc. to spare 36</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip down 21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip-off 28</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip sb off 28</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tip the balance 41</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tire sb out 21</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to all intents and purposes 38</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be fair 43</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to be on the safe side 13</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to begin with 37</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to put it mildly 43</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to say the least 12</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to start/begin with 37</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to the detriment of sb/sth  37
to whom it may concern  54
tongue in cheek  42
too many cooks spoil the broth  60
top-heavy  19
toss up  47
touch wood  13
tread carefully  32
tried and tested  20
try sth out  20
turn a blind eye (to sth)  47
turn on sb  8
turn out  29
turn over a new leaf  16
turn sb away  33
turn sth round/around = complete a task in a particular time  55
turn sth round/around = reverse sth  55
turn to sb/sth 6, 47
turnout  29
twist sb round your little finger  6
two weeks / three years / four times, etc. running 16
two's company (three's a crowd)  60
under an/no obligation to do sth  24
under false pretences  52
under offer  54
under one roof / the same roof  57
under pressure  27
under sb's thumb  5
under separate cover  53
under the influence  52
under the weather  13
under/on oath  52
up in arms about/over sth  39
up to your eyes in sth  57
use your head  2
a U-turn  56
very much so  50
a volte-face  56
vote with your feet  43
wait for the dust to settle  2
a wake-up call  30
walk all over sb  6
walk away  7
a war of words  30
watch out for sth  3
watch sb like a hawk  58
water off a duck's back  49
water sth down  4
watered-down  4
wear and tear  59
wear off  13
wear sb out  4, 21
wear sth out  4
weigh sth up  47
well and truly  39
what is it now?  50
what of it?  50
what planet is he/she on?  42
when in Rome (do as the Romans do)  60
when it comes to (doing) sth  40
a white elephant  56
a white lie  56
win sb over/round (to sth)  6, 34
win sb/sth back  18
wind sb up = make sb angry  9, 22
wind sth up = bring sth to an end  21
wing it  36
wipe sb/sth out  33
with (all due) respect (to sb)  51
with flying colours  16
with open arms  37
with your eyes open  11
within striking distance  25
within your rights  57
without (a) doubt  39
work out (+ wh)  3
work yourself up (about sth)  44
work/go like a dream  58
worn out (of people)  4, 21
worn out (of things)  4
worse luck  38
wound up  22
wrap sth up = complete an enquiry, meeting, etc.  55
wrap sth up = wrap sth in paper  55
wreak havoc (on sth)  33
write sth off (as sth)  46
you can't make an omelette without breaking eggs  60
you can't teach an old dog new tricks  35, 60
you could do worse (than)  44
you get what you deserve  35
you'll/he'll, etc. be lucky  38, 50
your best bet  44
your own flesh and blood  8
your usual/normal self  13
zip sth up  10
### Key words

If you cannot remember the first word of an idiom, look here for other key words that are used in the idiom.
The numbers are unit numbers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>abode</th>
<th>52</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>accordance</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>act</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>advocate</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afford</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ahead</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>air</td>
<td>7,30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alight</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all</td>
<td>38, 41, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all out</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alone</td>
<td>17, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>analysis</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anything</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anywhere</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apart</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>approval</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arm</td>
<td>7, 12, 39, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arms</td>
<td>37, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrears</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>assured</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>astray</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>away</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back</td>
<td>24, 26, 34, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back seat</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>back teeth</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad light</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad patch</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bag</td>
<td>22, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balance</td>
<td>18, 31, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bandwagon</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bank</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bargain</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bark</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>basket</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bat</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>battle</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beans</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bear</td>
<td>7, 41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beating</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bed</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bee</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beetroot</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begin</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behind</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belief</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>believe</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belt</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bench</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benefit</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best bet</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best shot</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>best thing</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bet</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bets</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better</td>
<td>13, 23, 24, 27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>better off</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beyond</td>
<td>12, 42, 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>big deal</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bill</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bird</td>
<td>15, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bit much</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bite</td>
<td>1, 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blind</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blink</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blood</td>
<td>8, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>blue</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bluff</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boat</td>
<td>1, 19, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bobs</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bomb</td>
<td>20, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bones</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bonnet</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>book</td>
<td>57, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boot</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boots</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>born</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bothered</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bounds</td>
<td>16, 54, 59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brave face</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bread</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breadline</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>break</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breaking</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breathe</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bred</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brick wall</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bricks</td>
<td>39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bright</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broad daylight</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broke</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>broth</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brunt</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>brush</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bud</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>budge</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bull</td>
<td>45, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bullet</td>
<td>2, 31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bush</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>but</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>butter</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>button</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cake</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>call</td>
<td>30, 41, 51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camel's back</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>camps</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cards</td>
<td>2, 22, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>care</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carefully</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carpet</td>
<td>27, 40, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cat</td>
<td>8, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caught up</td>
<td>12, 33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cause</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caution</td>
<td>11, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chance</td>
<td>44, 48, 49, 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>change</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>charges</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheap</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>check</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheek</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cheerful</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chest</td>
<td>2, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chew</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chickens</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>china shop</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chip</td>
<td>2, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cinder</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>clear</td>
<td>28, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>closed doors</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colour</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>colours</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>combine</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>comes</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>common</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>company</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>concern</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conclusions</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conjunction</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conscience</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>considered</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contention</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convenience</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>convictions</td>
<td>47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cooks</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cool</td>
<td>5, 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>corner</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tight rein 2</td>
<td>way 6, 9, 11, 21, 25, 29, 32, 46, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tight spot 2</td>
<td>wayside 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>time 11, 19, 24, 57, 60</td>
<td>weak 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>times 44, 57</td>
<td>weather 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toast 23</td>
<td>wedge 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toe 57</td>
<td>weeks 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toll 32</td>
<td>weight 17, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ton 39</td>
<td>well 21, 38, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tooth 60</td>
<td>whale 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top 8, 9, 20, 26, 41</td>
<td>white 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>top gear 14</td>
<td>wildest 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toss 43</td>
<td>wildfire 58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toss-up 47</td>
<td>will 52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>touch 5, 13, 24</td>
<td>willing 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tough 5</td>
<td>wind 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>towel 1</td>
<td>wing 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>track 2</td>
<td>wire 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trade 17</td>
<td>wires 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trap 45</td>
<td>wits 9, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>treatment 56</td>
<td>woman 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trend 18</td>
<td>wonder 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tribute 51</td>
<td>wood 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tricks 17, 35, 60</td>
<td>woods 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trim 24</td>
<td>wool 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true 27, 41</td>
<td>word 5, 15, 29, 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truly 39</td>
<td>word go 37, 57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>truth 36</td>
<td>words 30, 39, 42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trying 16</td>
<td>work 1, 5, 39, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>turn 13, 60</td>
<td>worked up 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>two evils 47</td>
<td>world 9, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unawares 33</td>
<td>worse 1, 13, 24, 25, 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uncertain terms 38</td>
<td>worse off 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>undoing 52</td>
<td>worst 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unknown 5</td>
<td>worth 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>up 28</td>
<td>wreck 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use 53</td>
<td>write 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>useful 21</td>
<td>wrong 1, 34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usual self 13</td>
<td>wrong track 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>utmost 32</td>
<td>wrong way 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vacant 54</td>
<td>wrongly 47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ventured 60</td>
<td>years 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verge 18</td>
<td>yesterday 40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>virtue 52</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voice 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Idioms and Phrasal Verbs

Extend your Oxford Word Skills – learn all the idioms and phrasal verbs you need to know at Intermediate and Advanced levels.

- See how idioms are used naturally in spoken and written English.
- Learn the phrasal verbs you need to know for the major exams.
- Practise using the idioms and phrasal verbs as you learn them, and revise what you’ve learned.
- Look online for fascinating information on the history of idioms – with regular updates.
- Part of the Oxford Word Skills series.

Ideal for self-study

For advanced learners

Ruth Gairns and Stuart Redman are language teaching experts who specialize in writing materials for learning and teaching vocabulary.

www.oup.com/elt/wordskills

www.oup.com/elt